

Columbia Lectures on the stability of Kerr

Sergiu Klainerman

September 27, 2023

Abstract. The main goals of these lectures are:

1. Provide a comprehensive introduction to the proof of the nonlinear stability of slowly rotating Kerr black holes established recently in the sequence of works [K-S:Kerr], [GKS-2022], [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2] and [Shen], and briefed in [K-S:review]
2. Discuss the geometric formalism based on non-integrable null horizontal structures used in these works. Derive the main Teukolsky and generalized Regge- Wheeler equations. These follow the material 1 of Part 1 in [GKS-2022].
3. Discuss the proof of the basic hyperbolic estimates, Morawetz and r^p -weighted, following Part 2 of [GKS-2022].
4. Discuss open problems related to these topics.

Contents

I	Introduction and Geometric Formalism	9
1	General Introduction	11
1.1	Kerr stability conjecture	11
1.1.1	Kerr spacetime	11
1.1.2	Kerr stability conjecture	13
1.1.3	Resolution of the conjecture for slowly rotating black holes	14
1.2	Linear and nonlinear stability	17
1.2.1	Notions of nonlinear stability	17
1.2.2	The case of the Kerr family	19
1.2.3	Stability of Minkowski space	19
1.2.4	Main difficulties	21
1.2.5	Linear stability	23
1.2.6	Model problems	26
1.3	Short survey of model problems	27
1.3.1	Mode stability results	27
1.3.2	Quantitative decay for the scalar wave equation	28

1.3.3	Linear stability of Schwarzschild	29
1.3.4	Linear stability of Kerr for small angular momentum	30
1.3.5	Nonlinear model problems	31
1.4	Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1	34
1.4.1	The bootstrap region	34
1.4.2	Main intermediary results	35
1.4.3	Main new ideas of the proof	36
2	Introduction III.	45
2.1	Geometric set-up	45
2.1.1	Spacetime \mathcal{M}	45
2.1.2	Ricci and curvature coefficients	47
2.1.3	Basic equations and complexification	47
2.2	Main theorems	49
2.2.1	Smallness constants	49
2.2.2	Initial data assumptions	50
2.2.3	Quantitative assumptions on the spacetime \mathcal{M}	51
2.2.4	Statement of the main theorems	52
2.3	Derivation and estimates for the gRW equations	54
2.3.1	Teukolsky and gRW equations in our approach	54
2.3.2	RW model equations	56
2.4	Main steps in the proof of Theorems M1 and M2	57
2.5	Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 2.3.4	57

<i>CONTENTS</i>	5
2.6 Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 2.2.4	57
II Formalism and derivation of the main equations	59
3 The geometric formalism of null horizontal structures	61
3.0.1 Null pairs and horizontal structures	61
3.0.2 Horizontal covariant derivative	67
3.0.3 The Gauss equation	70
3.0.4 Horizontal Hodge operators	72
3.1 Horizontal structures and Einstein equations	78
3.1.1 Ricci coefficients	78
3.1.2 Curvature and Weyl fields	79
3.1.3 Pairing transformations	81
3.1.4 Horizontal tensor \mathbf{B}	82
3.1.5 Null structure equations	83
3.1.6 Null Bianchi identities	84
3.1.7 Null Bianchi Equations using Hodge Operators	85
3.1.8 Main equations using conformally invariant derivatives	86
3.1.9 Spacetimes of Petrov type D	88
3.1.10 Commutation formulas	89
3.1.11 Commutation formulas for conformal derivatives	92
3.1.12 Commutation formulas with horizontal Lie derivatives	94
3.2 Wave operators	97

3.2.1	Commutation with $\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X$ and $\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X$	97
3.2.2	Killing tensor and commutation with second order operators	98
3.2.3	A class of spin-k wave operators with potential	99
3.2.4	Decomposition of $\dot{\square}_k$ in null frames	100
3.3	Integrable S -foliations	101
3.3.1	Diez operators	103
3.3.2	Commutator formulas for the diez operators	105
3.3.3	Double null and geodesic foliations	108
3.3.4	Teukolski and Regge-Wheeler equations in the integrable case . . .	110
3.4	Main equations in complex notations	110
3.4.1	Complex notations	111
3.4.2	Main equations in complex form	114
3.4.3	Main complex equations using conformal derivatives	117
3.4.4	Connection to the Newman-Penrose formalism	119
3.5	The wave operator using complex derivatives	120
4	Derivation of the main equations in in linear perturbations of Schwarzschild	123
4.1	Derivation of the Teukolsky equations	123
4.1.1	Useful calculations	125
4.1.2	Teukolsky Equation for α	126
4.2	Derivation of the RW equation	129
4.2.1	The commuted First Bianchi system	129
4.2.2	Teuklosky equation for $Q(\alpha)$	130

4.2.3	Function r and normalizations	135
4.2.4	Reggie-Wheeler equation	136
A	Wave propagation in Minkowski space	139
A.1	General Facts about scalar wave equations	139
A.1.1	Energy-Momentum Tensor	139
A.1.2	Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields	140
A.1.3	Commutation of \square_g with a vectorfield	142
A.1.4	Generalized Integral currents	143
A.2	Classical Vectorfield Method in Minkowski space	144
A.2.1	Symmetries of Minkowski space	144
A.2.2	Wave equation in Minkowski space \mathbb{R}^{n+1}	146
A.2.3	Basic Conservation Laws in Minkowski space	147
A.2.4	Vectorfield method and pointwise decay in Minkowski space	149
A.2.5	Global conformal energy identity	150
A.2.6	Null Conformal energy	153
A.3	Other integral estimates	155
A.3.1	Morawetz Estimates	155
A.3.2	r^p Weighted Flux Estimates	158
A.3.3	Decay of the Energy Flux	161

Part I

Introduction and Geometric Formalism

Chapter 1

General Introduction

This is a brief introduction to the sequence of works [K-S:Kerr], [GKS-2022], [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2] and [Shen] which establish the nonlinear stability of Kerr black holes with small angular momentum. This chapter is essentially the review paper [K-S:review] with a few additions.

1.1 Kerr stability conjecture

1.1.1 Kerr spacetime

Let $(\mathcal{K}(a, m), \mathbf{g}_{a, m})$ denote the family of Kerr spacetimes depending on the parameters m (mass) and a (with $J = am$ angular momentum). In Boyer-Lindquist coordinates the Kerr metric is given by

$$\mathbf{g}_{a, m} = -\frac{q^2 \Delta}{\Sigma^2} (dt)^2 + \frac{\Sigma^2 (\sin \theta)^2}{|q|^2} \left(d\phi - \frac{2amr}{\Sigma^2} dt \right)^2 + \frac{|q|^2}{\Delta} (dr)^2 + |q|^2 (d\theta)^2, \quad (1.1.1)$$

where

$$\begin{cases} \Delta = r^2 + a^2 - 2mr, & q = r + ia \cos \theta, \\ \Sigma^2 = (r^2 + a^2)|q|^2 + 2mra^2(\sin \theta)^2 = (r^2 + a^2)^2 - a^2(\sin \theta)^2 \Delta. \end{cases} \quad (1.1.2)$$

The asymptotically flat¹ metrics $\mathbf{g}_{a, m}$ verify the Einstein vacuum equations (EVE)

$$\mathbf{Ric}(\mathbf{g}) = 0, \quad (1.1.3)$$

¹That is they approach the Minkowski metric for large r .

are stationary and axially symmetric², possess well-defined event horizon $r = r_+$ (the largest root of $\Delta(r) = 0$), domain of outer communication $r > r_+$ and smooth future null infinity \mathcal{I}^+ where $r = +\infty$. The metric can be extended smoothly inside the black hole region, see Figure 1.1. The boundary $r = r_-$ (the smallest root of $\Delta(r) = 0$) inside the black hole region is a Cauchy horizon across which predictability fails³.

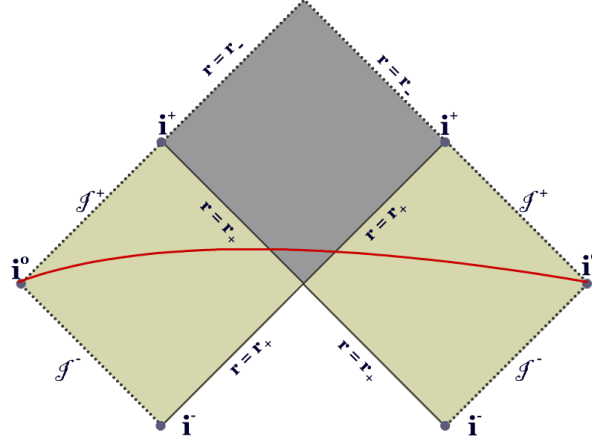


Figure 1.1: Penrose diagram of Kerr for $0 < |a| < m$. The surface $r = r_+$, the larger root of $\Delta = 0$, is the event horizon of the black hole, $r > r_+$ the domain of outer communication, \mathcal{I}^+ is the future null infinity, corresponding to $r = +\infty$.

Here are some of the most important properties of $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$:

- $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$ possesses a canonical family of null pairs, called *principal null pairs*, of the form $(\lambda e_4, \lambda^{-1} e_3)$, with $\lambda > 0$ an arbitrary scalar function, and

$$e_4 = \frac{r^2 + a^2}{|q|^2} \partial_t + \frac{\Delta}{|q|^2} \partial_r + \frac{a}{|q|^2} \partial_\phi, \quad e_3 = \frac{r^2 + a^2}{\Delta} \partial_t - \partial_r + \frac{a}{\Delta} \partial_\phi. \quad (1.1.4)$$

- The horizontal structure, perpendicular to e_3, e_4 , denoted \mathcal{H} , is spanned by the vectors

$$e_1 = \frac{1}{|q|} \partial_\theta, \quad e_2 = \frac{a \sin \theta}{|q|} \partial_t + \frac{1}{|q| \sin \theta} \partial_\phi. \quad (1.1.5)$$

The distribution generated by \mathcal{H} is non-integrable for $a \neq 0$.

²That is $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$ possess two Killing vectorfields: the stationary vectorfield $\mathbf{T} = \partial_t$, which is time-like in the asymptotic region, away from the horizon, and the axial symmetric Killing field $\mathbf{Z} = \partial_\phi$.

³Infinitely many smooth extensions are possible beyond the boundary.

- The horizontal structure (e_3, e_4, \mathcal{H}) has the remarkable property that all components of the Riemann curvature tensor \mathbf{R} , decomposed relative to them, vanish with the exception of those which can be deduced from⁴ $\mathbf{R}(e_a, e_3, e_b, e_4)$.
- $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$ possesses the Killing vectorfields \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z} which, in BL coordinates, are given by $\mathbf{T} = \partial_t, \mathbf{Z} = \partial_\phi$.
- In addition to the symmetries generated by \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z} , $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$ possesses also a non-trivial Killing tensor⁵, i.e. a symmetric 2-tensor $\mathbf{C}_{\alpha\beta}$ verifying the property $\mathbf{D}_\gamma \mathbf{C}_{\alpha\beta} = 0$. The tensor carries the name of its discoverer B. Carter, see [Carter], who made use of it to show that the geodesic flow in Kerr is integrable. Its presence, in addition to \mathbf{T} and \mathbf{Z} , as a higher order symmetry, is at the heart of what Chandrasekhar, see [Chand3], called the most striking feature of Kerr, “the separability of all the standard equations of mathematical physics in Kerr geometry”.
- The Carter tensor can be used to define the Carter operator

$$\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{D}_\alpha (\mathbf{C}^{\alpha\beta} \mathbf{D}_\beta), \quad (1.1.6)$$

a second order operator which commutes with $\square_{a,m}$. This property plays a crucial role in the proof of our stability result, Theorem 1.1.1, more precisely in Part II of [GKS-2022].

1.1.2 Kerr stability conjecture

The discovery of black holes, first as explicit solutions of EVE and later as possible explanations of astrophysical phenomena⁶, has not only revolutionized our understanding of the universe, it also gave mathematicians a monumental task: to test the physical reality of these solutions. This may seem nonsensical since physics tests the reality of its objects by experiments and observations and, as such, needs mathematics to formulate the

⁴One can in fact complexify the curvature tensor by setting $\mathbf{C} = \mathcal{R} + i \mathbf{*}\mathcal{R}$ so that $\mathbf{*}\mathbf{C} = -i\mathbf{C}$. All null components of \mathbf{C} vanish except $\mathbf{C}(e_3, e_4, e_3, e_4) = -\frac{2m}{\rho^3}$.

⁵Given by the expression $\mathbf{C} = -a^2 \cos^2 \theta \mathbf{g} + O$, $O = |q|^2 (e_1 \otimes e_1 + e_2 \otimes e_2)$.

⁶According to Chandrasekhar “Black holes are macroscopic objects with masses varying from a few solar masses to millions of solar masses. To the extent that they may be considered as stationary and isolated, to that extent, they are all, every single one of them, described exactly by the Kerr solution. This is the only instance we have of an exact description of a macroscopic object. Macroscopic objects, as we see them around us, are governed by a variety of forces, derived from a variety of approximations to a variety of physical theories. In contrast, the only elements in the construction of black holes are our basic concepts of space and time. They are, thus, almost by definition, the most perfect macroscopic objects there are in the universe. And since the general theory of relativity provides a single two parameter family of solutions for their description, they are the simplest as well.”

theory and make quantitative predictions, not to test it. The problem, in this case, is that black holes are by definition non-observable and thus no direct experiments are possible. Astrophysicists ascertain the presence of such objects through indirect observations⁷ and numerical experiments, but both are limited in scope to the range of possible observations or the specific initial conditions in which numerical simulations are conducted. One can rigorously check that the Kerr solutions have vanishing Ricci curvature, that is, their mathematical reality is undeniable. But to be real in a physical sense, they have to satisfy certain properties which, as it turns out, can be neatly formulated in unambiguous mathematical language. Chief among them⁸ is the problem of stability, that is, to show that if the precise initial data corresponding to Kerr are perturbed a bit, the basic features of the corresponding solutions do not change much⁹.

Conjecture (Stability of Kerr conjecture). *Vacuum, asymptotically flat, initial data sets, sufficiently close to $Kerr(a, m)$, $|a|/m < 1$, initial data, have maximal developments with complete future null infinity and with domain of outer communication¹⁰ which approaches (globally) a nearby Kerr solution.*

1.1.3 Resolution of the conjecture for slowly rotating black holes

Statement of the main result

The goal of this article is to give a short introduction to our recent result in which we settle the conjecture in the case of slowly rotating Kerr black holes.

Theorem 1.1.1. *The future globally hyperbolic development of a general, asymptotically flat, initial data set, sufficiently close (in a suitable topology) to a $Kerr(a_0, m_0)$ initial data*

⁷The physical reality of these objects was recently put to test by LIGO-Viergo which is supposed to have detected the gravitational waves generated in the final stage of the in-spiraling of two black holes. Rainer Weiss, Barry C. Barish and Kip S. Thorne received the 2017 Nobel prize for their “decisive contributions” in this respect. The 2020 Nobel prize in Physics was awarded to R. Genzel and A. Ghez for providing observational evidence for the presence of super massive black holes in the center of our galaxy, and to R. Penrose for his theoretical foundational work: his concept of a trapped surface and the proof of his famous singularity theorem.

⁸Other such properties concern the rigidity of the Kerr family, see [IK-review] for a current survey, or the dynamical formations of black holes from regular configurations, see the [Chr-BH], [KI-Rod1] and the introduction to [?] for an up to date account of more recent results.

⁹If the Kerr family would be unstable under perturbations, black holes would be nothing more than mathematical artifacts.

¹⁰This presupposes the existence of an event horizon. Note that the existence of such an event horizon can only be established a posteriori, upon the completion of the proof of the conjecture.

set, for sufficiently small $|a_0|/m_0$, has a complete future null infinity \mathcal{I}^+ and converges in its causal past $\mathcal{J}^{-1}(\mathcal{I}^+)$ to another nearby Kerr spacetime $\text{Kerr}(a_f, m_f)$ with parameters (a_f, m_f) close to the initial ones (a_0, m_0) .

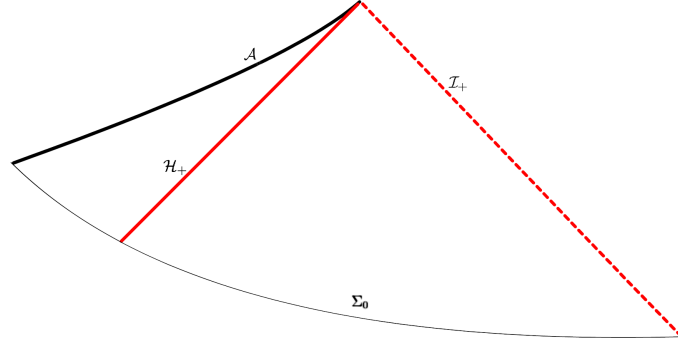


Figure 1.2: The Penrose diagram of the final space-time in Theorem 1.1.1 with initial hypersurface Σ_0 , future space-like boundary \mathcal{A} , and \mathcal{I}^+ the complete future null infinity. The hypersurface \mathcal{H}_+ is the future event horizon of the final Kerr.

The precise version of the result, all the main features of the architecture of its proof, as well as detailed proofs for most of the main steps are to be found in [K-S:Kerr]. The full proof relies also on our joint work [GKS-2022] with E. Giorgi, our papers [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2] on GCM spheres, and the extension [Shen] to GCM hypersurfaces by D. Shen.

Brief comments on the proof

We will discuss the main ideas of the proof in more details in section 1.4. It pays however to give already a graphic sense of the main building blocks of our approach, which we call *general covariant modulated* (GCM), admissible spacetimes.

The main features of these finite spacetimes $\mathcal{M} = {}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(top)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ with future boundaries $\mathcal{A} \cup {}^{(top)}\Sigma \cup \Sigma_*$ and past boundaries $\underline{\mathcal{B}}_1 \cup \underline{\mathcal{B}}_2$ are as follows:

- The capstone of the entire construction is the sphere S_* , on the future boundary Σ_* of ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, which verifies a set of specific extrinsic and intrinsic conditions denoted by the acronym GCM.
- The spacelike hypersurface Σ_* , initialized at S_* , verifies a set of additional GCM conditions.

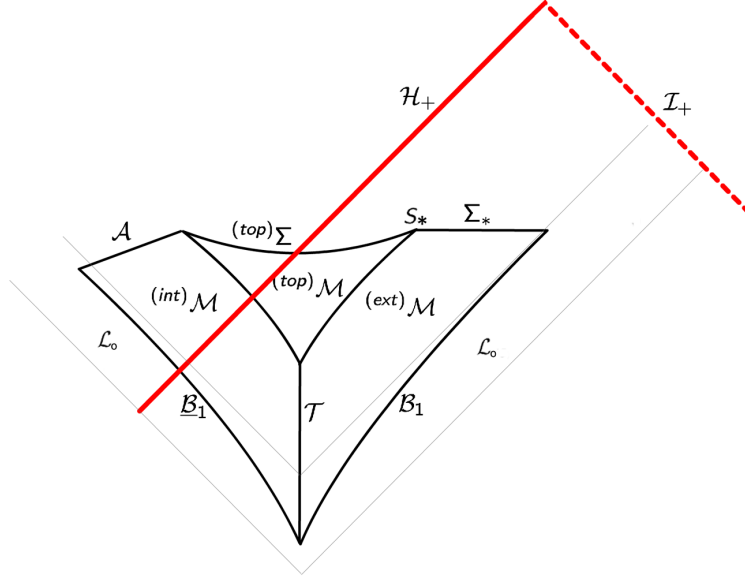


Figure 1.3: The Penrose diagram of a finite GCM admissible space-time $\mathcal{M} = {}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(top)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$. The future boundary Σ_* initiates at the GCM sphere S_* . The past boundary of \mathcal{M} , $\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \underline{\mathcal{B}}_1$, is included in the initial layer \mathcal{L}_0 , in which the spacetime is assumed given.

- Once Σ_* is specified the whole GCM admissible spacetime \mathcal{M} is determined by a more conventional construction, based on geometric transport type equations¹¹.
- The construction, which also allows us to specify adapted null frames¹², is made possible by the covariance properties of the Einstein vacuum equations.
- The past boundary $\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \underline{\mathcal{B}}_1$ of \mathcal{M} , which is itself to be constructed, is included in the initial layer \mathcal{L}_0 in which the spacetime is assumed to be known¹³, i.e. a small vacuum perturbation of a Kerr solution.

The proof of Theorem 1.1.1 is centered around a limiting argument for a continuous family of such spacetimes \mathcal{M} together with a set of bootstrap assumptions (BA) for the

¹¹More precisely ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ can be determined from Σ_* by a specified outgoing foliation terminating in the timelike boundary \mathcal{T} , ${}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ is determined from \mathcal{T} by a specified incoming one, and ${}^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$ is a complement of ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ which makes \mathcal{M} a causal domain.

¹²In our work we prefer to talk about horizontal structures, see the brief discussion in section 1.4.3. Another important novelty in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 is that it relies on non-integrable horizontal structures, see section 1.4.3.

¹³The passage from the initial data, specified on the initial spacelike hypersurface Σ_0 , to the initial layer spacetime \mathcal{L}_0 , can be justified by arguments similar to those of [KL-Ni1] [KL-Ni2], based on the methods introduced in [Ch-Kl].

connection and curvature coefficients, relative to the adapted frames. Assuming that a given finite, GCM admissible, spacetime \mathcal{M} saturates BA we reach a contradiction as follows:

- First improve BA for some of the components of the curvature tensor with respect to the frame. These verify equations (called Teukolsky equations) which decouple, up to terms quadratic in the perturbation, and are treated by wave equations methods.
- Use the information provided by these curvature coefficients together with the gauge choice on \mathcal{M} , induced by the GCM condition on Σ_* , to improve BA for all other Ricci and curvature components.
- Use these improved estimates to extend \mathcal{M} to a strictly larger spacetime \mathcal{M}' and then construct a new GCM sphere S'_* , a new boundary Σ'_* which initiates on S'_* , and a new GCM admissible spacetime \mathcal{M}' , with Σ'_* as boundary, strictly larger than \mathcal{M} .

Remark 1.1.2. *The critical new feature of this argument is the fact that the new GCM sphere S'_* has to be constructed as a co-dimension 2 sphere in \mathcal{M}' with no reference to the initial conditions¹⁴. This construction appears first in [K-S:Schw] in a polarized situation. The general construction appears in the GCM papers [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2]. The construction of Σ'_* from S'_* appears first in [K-S:Schw] in the polarized case. The general construction used in our work is due to D. Shen [Shen].*

1.2 Linear and nonlinear stability

1.2.1 Notions of nonlinear stability

Consider a stationary solution ϕ_0 of a nonlinear evolution equation

$$\mathcal{N}[\phi] = 0. \tag{1.2.1}$$

There are two distinct notions of stability, *orbital stability*, according to which small perturbations of ϕ_0 lead to solutions ϕ which remain close to ϕ_0 for all time, and *asymptotic stability (AS)* according to which the perturbed solutions converge as $t \rightarrow \infty$ to ϕ_0 . In the case where ϕ_0 is non trivial, there is a third notion, which we call *asymptotic orbital stability (AOS)*, to describe the fact that the perturbed solutions may converge to a

¹⁴See a more detailed discussion in section 1.4.3.

different stationary solution. This happens if ϕ_0 belongs to a multi-parameter smooth family of stationary solutions, or by applying a gauge transform to ϕ_0 which keeps the equation invariant¹⁵.

For quasilinear equations¹⁶, such as EVE, a proof of stability means necessarily AS or AOS stability. Both require a detailed understanding of the *decay properties* of the linearized equation, i.e.

$$\mathcal{L}[\phi_0]\psi = 0, \quad (1.2.2)$$

with $\mathcal{L}[\phi_0]$ the Fréchet derivative $\mathcal{N}'[\phi_0]$. This is, essentially, a linear hyperbolic system with variable coefficients which, typically, presents instabilities¹⁷.

In the exceptional situation, when stability can ultimately be established, one can tie all the instability modes to the following properties of the nonlinear equation:

- M1. If ϕ_λ is a family of stationary solutions, near ϕ_0 , verifying $\mathcal{N}[\phi_\lambda] = 0$. Then $\psi_0 = (\frac{d}{d\lambda}\phi_\lambda)_{\lambda=0}$ verifies $\mathcal{N}'[\phi_0]\psi_0 = 0$, i.e. ψ_0 is a nontrivial, stationary, bound state of the linearized equations (1.2.2).
- M2. If Φ_λ is a smooth family of diffeomorphisms of the background manifold, $\Phi_0 = I$, such that $\mathcal{N}[\Phi_\lambda^*(\phi_0)] = 0$. Then $\Psi_0 = (\frac{d}{d\lambda}\Phi_\lambda^*(\phi_0))_{\lambda=0}$ verifies $\mathcal{N}'[\phi_0]\Psi_0 = 0$, i.e. Ψ_0 is also a stationary bound state of the linearized equation (1.2.2).

These linear instabilities are responsible for the fact that a small perturbation of the fixed stationary solution ϕ_0 may not converge to ϕ_0 but to another nearby stationary solution¹⁸.

To prove the asymptotic convergence of ϕ to a final state ϕ_f , different from ϕ_0 , we need to establish sufficiently strong rates of decay¹⁹ for $\phi - \phi_f$. Rates of decay however are strongly *coordinate dependent*, i.e. dependent on the choice of the diffeomorphism (or gauge) Φ in which decay is measured. Thus, to prove a nonlinear stability result we need to know both the final state ϕ_f and the coordinate system Φ_f in which sufficient decay, and thus convergence to ϕ_f , can be established. The difficulty here is that neither ϕ_f nor Φ_f can be determined a-priori (from the initial perturbation), they have to emerge

¹⁵In the case of Kerr, both cases are present as we shall see below.

¹⁶Orbital stability can be established directly (i.e. without establishing the stronger version) only in rare occasions, such as for hamiltonian equations with weak nonlinearities.

¹⁷In unstable situations (1.2.2) may have exponentially growing solutions, see for example [DKSW].

¹⁸The methodology of tracking this asymptotic final state, in general different from ϕ_0 , is usually referred to as modulation. See for example [Ma-Me],[Me-R] for how modulation theory can be used to deal with some examples of scalar nonlinear dispersive equations.

¹⁹To control the nonlinear terms of the equation.

dynamically in the process of convergence. Moreover, in all examples involving nonlinear wave equations in $1 + 3$ dimensions, the nonlinear terms have to also cooperate, that is an appropriate version of the so called null condition has to be verified.

To summarize, given a nonlinear system $\mathcal{N}[\phi] = 0$ which possesses both a smooth family of stationary solutions ϕ_λ and a smooth family of invariant diffeomorphisms a proof of the nonlinear stability of ϕ_0 requires the following ingredients:

- The only non-decaying modes of the linearized equation $\mathcal{L}(\phi_0)\psi = 0$ are those due to the items M1–M2 above. In particular there are no exponentially growing modes.
- A dynamical construction of both the final state ϕ_f and the final gauge Φ_f in which convergence to the final state takes place.
- The nonlinear terms in the equation

$$\mathcal{L}[\phi_f]\psi = N(\psi)$$

obtained by expanding the equation $\mathcal{N}[\phi]$ near ϕ_f , in the gauge given by the diffeomorphism Φ_f , has to verify an appropriate version of the null condition.

1.2.2 The case of the Kerr family

The issue of the stability of the Kerr family has been at the center of attention of GR physics and mathematical relativity for more than half a century, ever since their discovery by Kerr in [Kerr]. In this case we have to deal not only with a 2-parameter family of solutions, corresponding to the parameters (a, m) , but also with the entire group of diffeomorphisms²⁰ of \mathcal{M} . In what follows we try to discuss the main difficulties of the problem. In doing that it helps to compare these to those arising in the simplest case when $a = m = 0$, i.e. stability of Minkowski.

1.2.3 Stability of Minkowski space

Until very recently the only space-time for which full nonlinear stability had been established was the Minkowski space, see [Ch-Kl]. The proof is based on some important PDE advances of late last century:

²⁰Indeed, according to the covariant properties of the Einstein vacuum equations we cannot distinguish between \mathbf{g} and $\Phi^*\mathbf{g}$, for any diffeomorphism Φ of \mathcal{M} .

- (i) Robust approach, based on the vectorfield method, to derive quantitative decay based on generalized energy estimates and commutation with (approximate) Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields.
- (ii) The *null condition* identifying the deep mechanism for nonlinear stability, i.e. the specific structure of the nonlinear terms which enables stability despite the low decay of the perturbations.
- (iii) Elaborate bootstrap argument according to which one makes educated assumptions about the behavior of solutions to nonlinear wave equations and then proceeds, by a long sequence of a-priori estimates, to show that they are in fact satisfied. This amounts to a *conceptual linearization*, i.e. a method by which the equations become, essentially, linear²¹ without actually linearizing them.

The main innovation in the proof in [Ch-Kl] is the choice of an appropriate gauge condition, readjusted dynamically through the convergence process, by a continuity argument, which allows one to separate the curvature estimates, treated by hyperbolic methods, from the estimates for the connection coefficients. The key point is that these latter verify transport or elliptic equations in which the curvature terms appear as sources. Thus both the curvature components and connection coefficients can be controlled by a bootstrap argument. The gauge condition is based on the constructive choice of a maximal time function t and two outgoing optical functions $^{(int)}u$ ²² and $^{(ext)}u$ ²³ covering the interior and exterior parts of the spacetime.

Another novelty of [Ch-Kl] was the reliance on null frames adapted to the S -foliations induced by the level surfaces of t and u . These define integrable horizontal structures (in the language of part I of [GKS-2022]), by contrast with the non-integrable ones used in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 and discussed in section 1.4.3. The functions t, u and this integrable horizontal structure can be used to define approximate Killing vectorfields used in estimating the curvature.

²¹Note that in the context of EVE, and other quasilinear hyperbolic systems, this differs substantially from the usual notion of linearization around a fixed background.

²²The interior optical function is initialized on a timelike geodesic from the initial hypersurface.

²³The exterior optical function $^{(ext)}u$ is initialized on the last slice $t = t_*$, by the construction of a foliation (inverse lapse foliation) initialized at space-like infinity. It is thus readjusted dynamically as $t_* \rightarrow \infty$.

1.2.4 Main difficulties

There are a few major obstacles in passing from the stability of Minkowski to that of Kerr:

1. The first one was already discussed in section 1.2.1 in the general context of the stability of a stationary solution ϕ_0 . In the case when ϕ_0 is trivial there are no nontrivial bound states for the linearized problem and thus we expect that the final state does actually coincide with ϕ_0 . This is precisely the case for the special member of the Kerr family $a = m = 0$, i.e. the Minkowski space²⁴ (\mathbb{R}^{1+3}, m) . On the other hand, in perturbations of Kerr, general covariance affects the entire construction of the spacetime. In the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 the crucial concept of a GCM admissible spacetime is meant to deal with both finding the final parameters and the gauge in which convergence to the final state takes place.
2. A fundamental insight in the stability of the Minkowski space was that the Bianchi identities decouple at first order from the null structure equations which allows one to control curvature first, as a Maxwell type system (see [Ck-Kl0]), and then proceed with the rest of the solution. This cannot work for perturbations of Kerr due to the fact that some of the null components²⁵ of the curvature tensor are non-trivial in Kerr.
3. Even if one succeeds in tackling the above mentioned issues, there are still major obstacles in understanding the decay properties of the solution. Indeed, when one considers the simplest, relevant, linear equation on a fixed Kerr background, i.e. the scalar wave equation $\square_{a,m}\psi = 0$, one encounters serious difficulties to prove decay. Below is a very short description of these:
 - *The problem of trapped null geodesics.* This concerns the existence of null geodesics²⁶ neither crossing the event horizon nor escaping to null infinity, along which solutions can concentrate for arbitrary long times. This leads to degenerate energy-Morawetz estimates which require a very delicate analysis.
 - *The trapping properties of the horizon.* The horizon itself is ruled by null geodesics, which do not communicate with null infinity and can thus concen-

²⁴Note however that even though the linearized system around Minkowski does not contain instabilities, the proof of the nonlinear stability of the Minkowski space in [Ch-Kl] takes into account (in a fundamental way!) general covariance. Indeed the presence of the ADM mass affects the causal structure of the far, asymptotic, region of the perturbed space-time.

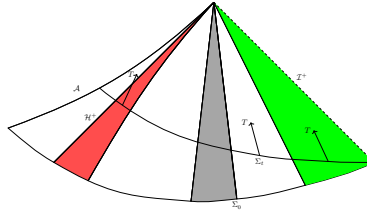
²⁵With respect to the *principal null directions of Kerr*, i.e a distinguished null pair which diagonalizes the full curvature tensor, the middle component $P = \rho + i^* \bar{\rho}$ is nontrivial.

²⁶In the Schwarzschild case, these geodesics are associated with the celebrated photon sphere $r = 3m$.

trate energy. This problem was solved by understanding the so called red-shift effect associated to the event horizon, which counteracts this type of trapping.

- *The problem of superradiance.* This is the failure of the stationary Killing field $\mathbf{T} = \partial_t$ to be everywhere timelike in the domain of outer communication²⁷, and thus, of the associated conserved energy to be positive. Note that this problem is absent in Schwarzschild and, in general, for axially symmetric solutions of EVE. In both cases however there still is a degeneracy along the horizon.
- *Superposition problem.* This is the problem of combining the estimates in the near region, close to the horizon, (including the ergoregion and trapping) with estimates in the asymptotic region, where the spacetime is close to Minkowski.

Figure 1.4: Penrose diagram of the Kerr exterior to the future of a spacelike hypersurface. Note that the ergoregion, in red, and the trapping region in blue are separated only if $|a|/m$ is sufficiently small.



4. Though, as seen above, the analysis of the scalar wave equation in Kerr presents formidable difficulties, it is itself just a vastly simplified model problem. A more realistic equation is the so called spin 2 wave equation, or Teukolsky equation, which presents many new challenges²⁸.
5. The full linearized system, whatever its formulation, presents many additional difficulties due to its complex tensorial structure and the huge gauge covariance of the equations²⁹. The crucial breakthrough in this regard is the observation, due to Teukolsky [Teuk], that the extreme components of the linearized curvature tensor are both gauge invariant (see below in section 1.2.5) and verify decoupled spin 2 equations, that is the Teukolsky equations mentioned above.

²⁷The stationary Killing vectorfield \mathbf{T} is timelike only outside of the so-called ergoregion.

²⁸Unlike the scalar wave equation $\square_{a,m}\psi = 0$, which is conservative, the Teukolsky equation is not, and we thus lack the most basic ingredient in controlling the solutions of the equation, i.e. energy estimates.

²⁹As mentioned earlier, rates of decay are heavily dependent on a proper choice of gauge, thus affecting the issue of convergence.

6. A crucial simplification of the linear theory, by comparison to the full nonlinear case, is that one can separate the treatment of the gauge invariant extreme curvature components from all the other gauge invariant quantities. In the nonlinear case this separation is no longer true, all quantities need to be treated simultaneously. Moreover, methods based on separation of variables, developed to treat scalar and spin 2 wave equations in Kerr, are incompatible with the nonlinear setting which requires, instead, robust methods to derive decay.

1.2.5 Linear stability

Linear stability for the vacuum equations is formulated in the following way. Given the Einstein tensor $\mathbf{G}_{\alpha\beta} = \mathbf{R}_{\alpha\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{R}\mathbf{g}_{\alpha\beta}$ and a stationary solution \mathbf{g}_0 , i.e. a fixed Kerr metric, one has to solve the system of equations

$$\mathbf{G}'(\mathbf{g}_0) \delta\mathbf{g} = 0. \quad (1.2.3)$$

The covariant properties of the Einstein equations, i.e. the equivalence between a solution \mathbf{g} and $\Phi^*(\mathbf{g})$, leads us to identify $\delta\mathbf{g}$ with $\delta\mathbf{g} + \mathcal{L}_X(\mathbf{g}_0)$ for arbitrary vectorfields X in \mathcal{M} , i.e.

$$\delta\mathbf{g} \equiv \delta\mathbf{g} + \mathcal{L}_X(\mathbf{g}_0). \quad (1.2.4)$$

We can now attempt to formulate a version of linear stability for (1.2.3), loosely related to the nonlinear stability of Kerr conjecture, as follows.

Definition 1.2.1. *By linear stability of the Kerr metric \mathbf{g}_0 we understand a result which achieves the following:*

Given an appropriate initial data for a perturbation $\delta\mathbf{g}$, find a vectorfield X such that, after projecting away the bound states generated by the parameters a, m , according to M1–M2 in section 1.2.1, a solution of the form $\delta\mathbf{g} + \mathcal{L}_X\mathbf{g}_0$ to (1.2.3), decays, relative to an appropriate null frame of $\mathcal{K}(a_0, m_0)$, sufficiently fast in time.

Remark 1.2.2. *The definition above is necessarily vague. What is the meaning of sufficiently fast? In fact various components of the metric $\delta\mathbf{g}$, relative to the canonical null frame of $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$, are expected to decay at different slow polynomial rates, some of which are not even integrable. Unlike in the nonlinear context, where one needs precise rates of decay for components of the curvature tensor and Ricci coefficients, as well as their derivatives, to be able to control the nonlinear terms, in linear theory any type of nontrivial*

control of solutions may be regarded as satisfactory³⁰ Thus linear stability, as formulated above, can only be regarded as a vastly simplified model problem. Nevertheless the study of linear stability of the Kerr family has turned out to be useful in various ways, as we shall see below.

Historically, the following versions of linear stability have been considered.

- (a) *Metric Perturbations.* At the level of the metric itself, i.e. as above in (1.2.3).
- (b) *Curvature Perturbations.* Via the Newman-Penrose (NP) formalism, based on null frames.

The strategy followed in both cases³¹ is:

- Find components of the metric (in case (a)) or curvature tensor (in case (b)), invariant with respect to linearized gauge transformations 1.2.4, which verify decoupled wave equations. The main insight of this type was the discovery, by Teukolsky [Teuk], in the context of (b) above, that the extreme components of the linearized curvature tensor verify both these properties.
- Analyze these components by showing one of the following:
 - There are no exponentially growing modes. This is known as mode stability.
 - Boundedness for all time.
 - Decay (sufficiently fast) in time.
- Find a linearized gauge condition, i.e. a vectorfield X , such that all remaining (gauge dependent) components (at the metric or curvature level) inherit the property mentioned above: no exponentially growing modes, boundedness, or decay in time. In the physics literature this is known as the problem of reconstruction.

Mode stability

All results on the linear stability of Kerr in the physics literature during the 10-15 years after Roy Kerr's 1963 discovery, often called the "Golden Age of Black Hole Physics",

³⁰ Thus, for example, in their well known linear stability result around Schwarzschild [DHR], the authors derive satisfactory results (compatible with what is needed in nonlinear theory) for components of the curvature tensor, and some Ricci coefficients, but not all. Similar comments apply to [HKW] and [Johnson].

³¹In the article we refer mainly to the curvature perturbation approach.

are based on mode decompositions. One makes use of the separability³² of the linearized equations, more precisely the Teukolsky equations, on a fixed Kerr background, to derive simple ODEs for the corresponding modes. One can then show, by ingenious methods, that these modes cannot exhibit exponential growth. The most complete result of this type is due to Bernard Whiting [Whit] in the case of the scalar wave equation.

The obvious limitation of these results are as follows:

- They are far from even establishing the boundedness of general solutions to the Teukolsky equations, let alone to establish quantitative decay for the general solutions.
- Results based on mode decompositions depend strongly on the specific symmetries of Kerr which cannot be adapted to perturbations of Kerr.

Robust methods to deal with both issues have been developed in the mathematical community, based on the vectorfield method which we discuss below.

Classical vectorfield method

The vectorfield method, as an analytic tool to derive decay, was first developed in connection with the wave equation in Minkowski space. As well known, solutions of the wave equation $\square\psi = 0$ in the Minkowski space \mathbb{R}^{n+1} both conserve energy and decay uniformly in time like $t^{-\frac{n-1}{2}}$. While conservation of energy can be established by a simple integration by parts, and is thus robust to perturbations of the Minkowski metric, decay was first derived either using the Kirchhoff formula or by Fourier methods, which are manifestly not robust. An integrated version of local energy decay, based on an inspired integration by parts argument, was first derived by C. Morawetz [Mor1], [Mor2]. The first derivation of decay based on the commutations properties of \square with Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields of Minkowski space together with energy conservation appear in [?] and [Kl-vect2]. The same method also provides precise information about the decay properties of derivatives of solutions with respect to the standard null frame of Minkowski space, an important motivating factor in the discovery of the null condition [Kl-ICM], [Chr] and [Kl-null].

The crucial feature of the methodology initiated by these papers, to which we refer as the classical vectorfield method, is that it can be easily adapted to perturbations of the Minkowski space. As such the method has had numerous applications to nonlinear wave

³²See discussion in section 1.1.1.

equations and played an important role in the proof of the nonlinear stability of Minkowski space, as discussed in section 1.2.3. It has also been applied to later versions of the stability of Minkowski in [Kl-Ni1]-[Kl-Ni2], [Lind-Rodn], [Bi], [Lind], [Huneau], [HV2], [Graf], and extensions of it to Einstein equation coupled with various matter fields in [BiZi], [FJS], [Lind-Ta], [BFJT], [Wa], [Lf-Ma], [IP].

New vectorfield method

To derive decay estimates for solutions of wave equations on a Kerr background one has to substantially refine the classical vectorfield method. The new vectorfield method is an extension of the classical method which compensates for the lack of enough Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields in Kerr by introducing, new, cleverly designed, vectorfields whose deformation tensors have coercive properties in different regions of spacetime, not necessarily causal. The method has emerged in the last 20 years in connection to the study of boundedness and decay for the scalar wave equation in Schwarzschild and Kerr, see section 1.3.2 for more details.

1.2.6 Model problems

To solve the stability of Kerr conjecture one has to deal simultaneously with all the difficulties mentioned above. This is, of course, beyond the abilities of mere humans. Instead the problem was tackled in a sequence of steps based on a variety of simplified model problems, in increasing order of difficulty. To start with we can classify model problems based on the following criteria:

1. Whether the result refers to Schwarzschild i.e. $a = 0$, slowly rotating Kerr i.e. $|a| \ll m$ or full non-extremal Kerr $|a| < m$.
2. Whether the result refers to linear or nonlinear stability.
3. Whether the result, in linear theory, refers to scalar wave equation, i.e. spin 0, Teukolsky equation, i.e. spin 2, or the full linearized system.
4. Whether the stability result, in linear theory, is a mode stability result, a boundedness result, one that establishes some version of quantitative decay or one that establishes an optimal version of quantitative decay

1.3 Short survey of model problems

We give below a short outline of the main developments concerning linear and nonlinear model problems for the Kerr stability problem, paying special attention to those which had a measurable influence on our work.

1.3.1 Mode stability results

These are mode stability results, using the method of separation of variables, obtained in the physics community roughly during the period 1963-1990. They rely on what Chandrasekhar called the most striking feature of Kerr i.e. “*the separability of all the standard equations of mathematical physics in Kerr geometry*”.

1. *Regge-Wheeler (1957)*. Even before the discovery of the Kerr solution physicists were interested in the mode stability of Schwarzschild space, i.e. $\mathcal{K}(0, m)$. The first important result goes back to T. Regge and J.A Wheeler [Re-W], in which they analyzed linear, metric perturbations, of the Schwarzschild metric. They showed that in a suitable gauge, equation (1.2.3) decouples into even-parity and odd-parity perturbations, corresponding to axial and polar perturbations. The most important discovery in that paper is that of the master Regge-Wheeler equation, a wave equation with a favorable potential, verified by an invariant scalar component ϕ of the metric, i.e.

$$\square_m \phi = V \phi, \quad V = \frac{4}{r^2} \left(1 - \frac{2m}{r} \right). \quad (1.3.1)$$

where \square_m denotes the wave operator of the Schwarzschild metric of mass m . The R-W study was completed by Vishveshwara [Vishev] and Zerilli [Ze]. A gauge-invariant formulation of *metric perturbations* was then given by Moncrief [Moncr].

2. *Teukolsky (1973)*. The curvature perturbation approach, near Schwarzschild, based on the Newman-Penrose (NP) formalism was first undertaken by Bardeen-Press [?]. This approach was later extended to the Kerr family by Teukolsky [Teuk], see also [P-T], who made the important discovery that the extreme curvature components, relative to a principal null frame, are gauge invariant and satisfy decoupled, separable, wave equations. The equations, bearing the name of Teukolsky, are roughly of the form

$$\square_{a,m} \psi = \mathcal{L}[\psi] \quad (1.3.2)$$

where $\mathcal{L}[\psi]$ is a first order linear operator in ψ .

3. *Chandrasekhar (1975)*. In [Chand2] Chandrasekhar initiated a transformation theory relating the two approaches. He exhibited a transformation which connects the Teukolsky equations to a Regge-Wheeler type equation. In the particular case of Schwarzschild the transformation takes the Teukolsky equation to the Regge-Wheeler equation in (1.3.1). The Chandrasekhar transformation was further elucidated and extended by R. Wald [Wald] and recently by Aksteiner and al [?]. Though originally it was meant only to unify the Regge-Wheeler approach with that of Teukolsky, the Chandrasekhar transformation, and various extensions of it, turn out to play an important role in the field.
4. *Whiting (1989)*. As mentioned before, the full mode stability, i.e. lack of exponentially growing modes, for the Teukolsky equation on Kerr is due to Whiting³³, see [Whit]. Stronger quantitative versions were proved in [AWPW], [Fins2], [Te].
5. *Reconstruction*. Once we know that the Teukolsky variables, i.e. the extreme components of the curvature tensor verify mode stability, i.e. there are no exponentially growing modes, it still remains to deal with the problem of reconstruction, i.e. to find a gauge relative to which all other components of the curvature and Ricci coefficients enjoy the same property. We refer the reader to Wald [Wald] and the references within for a treatment of this issue in the physics literature.

1.3.2 Quantitative decay for the scalar wave equation

As mentioned in section 1.2.5, mode stability is far from establishing even the boundedness of solutions. To achieve that³⁴ and, more importantly, to derive realistic decay estimates, one needs an entirely different approach based on what we called the “new vectorfield method” in section 1.2.5. The method has emerged in connection to the study of boundedness and decay for the scalar wave equation in $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$,

$$\square_{a,m}\phi = 0. \tag{1.3.3}$$

The starting and most demanding part of the new method, which appeared first in [B-S1], is the derivation of a global, combined, *Energy-Morawetz* estimate which degenerates in the trapping region. Once an Energy-Morawetz estimate is established one can commute with the Killing vectorfields of the background manifold, and the so called red shift

³³For the analogous result in the case of the scalar wave equation, see [Fins1]. See also [SR] for a stronger quantitative version which was used in [D-R-SR].

³⁴The first realistic boundedness result for solutions of the scalar wave equation in Schwarzschild appears in [K-Wald] based on a clever use of the energy method which takes into account the degeneracy of \mathbf{T} at the horizon.

vectorfield introduced in [DaRo1], to derive uniform bounds for solutions. The most efficient way to also get decay, and solve the *superposition problem* (see section 1.2.4), originating in [Da-Ro3], is based on the presence of family of r^p -weighted, quasi-conformal vectorfields defined in the non-causal, far r region of spacetime³⁵.

The first Energy-Morawetz type results for scalar wave equation (1.3.3) in Schwarzschild, i.e. $a = 0$, are due to Blue-Soffer [B-S1], [B-S2] and Blue-Sterbenz [B-St], based on a modified version of the classical Morawetz integral energy decay estimate. Further developments appear in the works of Dafermos-Rodnianski, see [DaRo1], [Da-Ro3], and Marzuola-Metcalfe-Tataru-Tohaneanu [Ma-Me-Ta-To]. The vectorfield method can also be extended to derive decay for axially symmetric solutions in Kerr, see [I-Kl] and³⁶ [St], but it is known to fail for general solutions in Kerr, see Alinhac [Al].

In the absence of axial symmetry the derivation of an Energy-Morawetz estimate in $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$ for $|a/m| \ll 1$ requires a more refined analysis involving both the vectorfield method and either micro-local methods or mode decompositions. The first full quantitative decay³⁷ result, based on micro-local analysis techniques, is due to Tataru-Tohaneanu [Ta-To]. The derivation of such an estimate in the full sub-extremal case $|a| < m$ is even more subtle and was achieved by Dafermos-Rodnianski-Shlapentokh-Rothman [D-R-SR] by combining the vectorfield method with a full separation of variables approach. A purely physical space proof of the Energy-Morawetz estimate for small $|a/m|$, which avoids both micro-local analysis and mode decompositions, was pioneered by Andersson-Blue in [A-B]. Their method, which extends the classical vectorfield method to include second order operators (in this case the Carter operator, see section 1.1.1), has the usual advantages of the classical vectorfield method, i.e it is robust with respect to perturbations. It is for this reasons that we rely on it in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1, more precisely in part II of [GKS-2022].

1.3.3 Linear stability of Schwarzschild

A first quantitative proof of the linear stability of Schwarzschild spacetime was established³⁸ by Dafermos-Holzegel-Rodnianski (DHR) in [DHR]. Notable in their analysis is

³⁵These replace the scaling and inverted time translation vectorfields used in [?] or their corresponding deformations used in [Ch-Kl]. A recent improvement of the method allowing one to derive higher order decay can be found in [AArGa].

³⁶In his Princeton PhD thesis Stogin establishes a Morawetz estimate even for the full subextremal case $|a| < m$.

³⁷See also [DaRo2] for the first proof of boundedness of solutions, based on mode decompositions.

³⁸A somewhat weaker version of linear stability of Schwarzschild was subsequently proved in [HKW] by using the original, direct, Regge-Wheeler, Zerilli approach combined with the vectorfield method and

the treatment of the Teukolsky equation in a fixed Schwarzschild background. While the Teukolsky equation is separable, and amenable to mode analysis, it is not variational and thus cannot be treated directly by energy type estimates. As mentioned earlier in section 1.3.1, Chandrasekhar was able to relate the Teukolsky equation to the Regge-Wheeler (RW) equation, which is both variational and coercive (the potential V has a favorable sign). In [DHR] the authors rely on a physical space version of the Chandrasekhar transformation. Once decay estimates for the RW equation have been established, based on the technology developed earlier for the scalar wave equation in Schwarzschild, the authors recover the expected boundedness and decay for solutions to the original Teukolsky equation.

The remaining work in [DHR] is to derive similar control for the other curvature components and the linearized Ricci coefficients associated to the double null foliation. This last step requires carefully chosen gauge conditions, which the authors make within the framework of a double null foliation, initialized both on the initial hypersurface and the background Schwarzschild horizon³⁹. This gauge fixing from initial data leads to sub-optimal decay estimates for some of the metric coefficients⁴⁰ and is thus inapplicable to the nonlinear case. This deficiency was fixed in the PhD thesis of E. Giorgi, in the context of the linear stability of Reissner-Nordström, see [Giorgi], by relying on a linearized version of the GCM construction in [K-S:Schw].

1.3.4 Linear stability of Kerr for small angular momentum

The first breakthrough result on the linear stability of Kerr, for $|a|/m \ll 1$, is due to Ma [Ma], see also [DHR-Kerr]. Both results are based on a generalization of the Chandrasekhar transformation to Kerr which takes the Teukolsky equations, verified by the extreme curvature components, to generalized versions of the Regge-Wheeler (gRW) equation. Relying on separation of variables and vectorfield techniques, similar to those developed for the scalar wave equation in slowly rotating Kerr, the authors derive Energy-Morawetz and r^p estimates for the solutions of the gRW equations. Note that these results were recently extended to the full subextremal range, $|a| < m$, in [SR-Te1], [SR-Te2] and [Millet].

The first stability results for the full linearized Einstein vacuum equations near $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$, for $|a|/m \ll 1$, appeared in [ABBMa2019] and [HHV]. The first paper, based on the

adapted gauge choices. See also [Johnson] for an alternate approach of linear stability of Schwarzschild using wave coordinates.

³⁹The authors use a scalar condition for the linearized lapse along the event horizon (part of what the authors call future normalized gauge), itself initialized from initial data, see (212) and (214) in [DHR].

⁴⁰See (250)–(252) and (254) in [DHR].

GHP formalism⁴¹, see [GHP], builds on the results of [Ma] while the second paper is based on an adapted version of the metric formalism and builds on the seminal work of the authors on Kerr-de Sitter [H-V1]. Though the ultimate relevance of these papers to nonlinear stability remains open, they are both remarkable results in so far as they deal with difficulties that looked insurmountable even ten years ago.

1.3.5 Nonlinear model problems

Nonlinear stability of Kerr-de Sitter

There is another important, simplified, nonlinear model problem which has drawn attention in recent years, due mainly to the striking achievement of Hintz and Vasy [H-V1]. This is the problem of stability of Kerr-de Sitter concerning the Einstein vacuum equation with a strictly positive cosmological constant

$$\mathbf{R}_{\alpha\beta} + \Lambda \mathbf{g}_{\alpha\beta} = 0, \quad \Lambda > 0. \quad (1.3.4)$$

In their work, which relies in part on the important mode stability result of Kodama and Ishibashi [Ko-Is], Hintz and Vasy were able to prove the nonlinear stability of the stationary part of Kerr-de Sitter with small angular momentum, the first nonlinear stability result of any nontrivial stationary solutions for the Einstein equations⁴². It is important to note that, despite the fact that, formally, the Einstein vacuum equation (1.1.3) is the limit⁴³ of (1.3.4) as $\Lambda \rightarrow 0$, the global behavior of the corresponding solutions is radically different⁴⁴.

The main simplification in the case of stationary solutions of (1.3.4) is that the expected decay rates of perturbations near Kerr-de Sitter is exponential, while in the case $\Lambda = 0$ the decay is lower degree polynomial⁴⁵, with various components of tensorial quantities

⁴¹An adapted spinorial version of the NP formalism.

⁴²This is also the first general nonlinear stability result in GR establishing asymptotic stability towards a family of solutions, i.e. full quantitative convergence to a final state close, but different from the initial one.

⁴³To pass to the limit requires one to understand all global in time solutions of (1.3.4) with $\Lambda = 1$, not only those which are small perturbations of Kerr-de Sitter, treated by [H-V1].

⁴⁴Major differences between formally close equations occur in many other contexts. For example, the incompressible Euler equations are formally the limit of the Navier-Stokes equations as the viscosity tends to zero. Yet, at fixed viscosity, the global properties of the Navier-Stokes equations are radically different from that of the Euler equations.

⁴⁵While there is exponential decay in the stationary part treated in [H-V1], note that lower degree polynomial decay is expected in connection to the stability of the complementary causal region (called cosmological or expanding) of the full Kerr-de Sitter space, see e.g. [Vo].

decaying at different rates, and the slowest decaying rate⁴⁶ being no better than t^{-1} . The Hintz-Vasy result was recently revisited in the work of A. Fang [Fang2] [Fang1] where he bridges the gap between the spectral methods of [H-V1] and the vectorfield methods.

Nonlinear stability of Schwarzschild

The first nonlinear stability result of the Schwarzschild space was established in [K-S:Schw]. In its simplest version, the result states the following.

Theorem 1.3.1 (Klainerman-Szeftel [K-S:Schw]). *The future globally hyperbolic development of an axially symmetric, polarized, asymptotically flat initial data set, sufficiently close (in a specified topology) to a Schwarzschild initial data set of mass $m_0 > 0$, has a complete future null infinity \mathcal{I}^+ and converges in its causal past $\mathcal{J}^{-1}(\mathcal{I}^+)$ to another nearby Schwarzschild solution of mass m_f close to m_0 .*

The restriction to axial polarized perturbations is the simplest assumption which insures that the final state is itself Schwarzschild and thus avoids the additional complications of the Kerr stability problem. We refer the reader to the introduction in [K-S:Schw] for a full discussion of the result.

The proof is based on a construction based on GCM admissible spacetimes similar to that briefly discussed in section 1.1.3 in the context of slowly rotating Kerr. There are however several important simplifications to be noted:

- The assumption of polarization makes the constructions of the GCM spheres S_* and spacelike hypersurface Σ_* significantly simpler, see Chapter 9 in [K-S:Schw], by comparison to the general case treated in [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2] and [Shen].
- The spacetime has only two components $\mathcal{M} = {}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and the null horizontal structures, defined on each component, are integrable.
- As in the case of the scalar wave equation on Schwarzschild space the main spin-2 Teukolsky wave equations can be treated (via the passage to the Regge-Wheeler equation) by a vectorfield approach. This is no longer true in Kerr and even less so in perturbations of Kerr.

⁴⁶Responsible for carrying gravitational waves at large distances so that they are detectable.

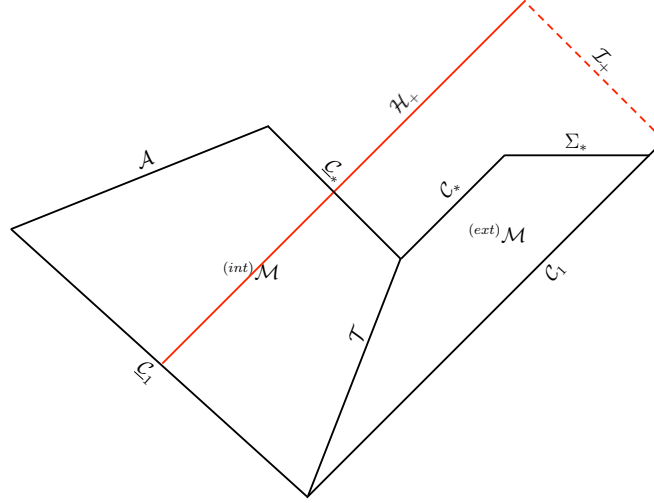


Figure 1.5: The GCM admissible space-time \mathcal{M} . By comparison to Figure ??, \mathcal{M} does not have $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$, the past boundaries $\mathcal{C}_0 \cup \underline{\mathcal{C}}_0$ and future boundary $\underline{\mathcal{C}} \cup \mathcal{C}_*$ are null and the horizontal structures (induced by geodesic foliations) are integrable. As in Theorem 1.1.1, the crucial GCM sphere S_* is defined and constructed with no reference to the initial data.

Recently Dafermos-Holzegel-Rodnianski-Taylor [DHRT] have extended⁴⁷ the result of [K-S:Schw] by properly preparing a co-dimension 3 subset of the initial data such that the final state is still Schwarzschild. Like in [K-S:Schw], the starting point of [DHRT] is to anchor the entire construction on a far away⁴⁸ GCM type sphere S_* , in the sense of [K-S:GCM1] [K-S:GCM2], with no direct reference to the initial data. It also uses the same definition of the angular momentum as in (7.19) of [K-S:GCM2]. Finally, the spacetime in [DHRT] is separated in an exterior region $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ and an interior region $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$, with the ingoing foliation of $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$, initialized based on the information induced by $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, as in [K-S:Schw]. We note, however, that [DHRT] does not use the geodesic foliation of [K-S:Schw], but instead both $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ are foliated by double null foliations, and thus, the process of estimating the gauge dependent variables is somewhat different.

⁴⁷The novelty of [DHRT], compared to [K-S:Schw], is the well preparation of the initial data, based on an additional three dimensional modulation. Note however that [DHRT] requires substantially stronger asymptotic conditions for the initial data compared to [K-S:Schw].

⁴⁸That is $r \gg u$, similar to the dominant in r condition (3.3.4) of [K-S:Schw].

1.4 Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1

1.4.1 The bootstrap region

As mentioned in section 1.1.3, the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 is centered around a continuity argument for a family of carefully constructed finite *generally covariant modulated (GCM) admissible spacetimes* $\mathcal{M} = {}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(top)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$. As can be seen in Figure 1.6 below, the future boundary of the spacetime is given by $\mathcal{A} \cup {}^{(top)}\Sigma \cup \Sigma_*$ where Σ_* is a spacelike, generally covariant modulated (GCM) hypersurface, that is a hypersurface verifying a set of crucial, well-specified, geometric conditions, essential to our proof of convergence to a final state.

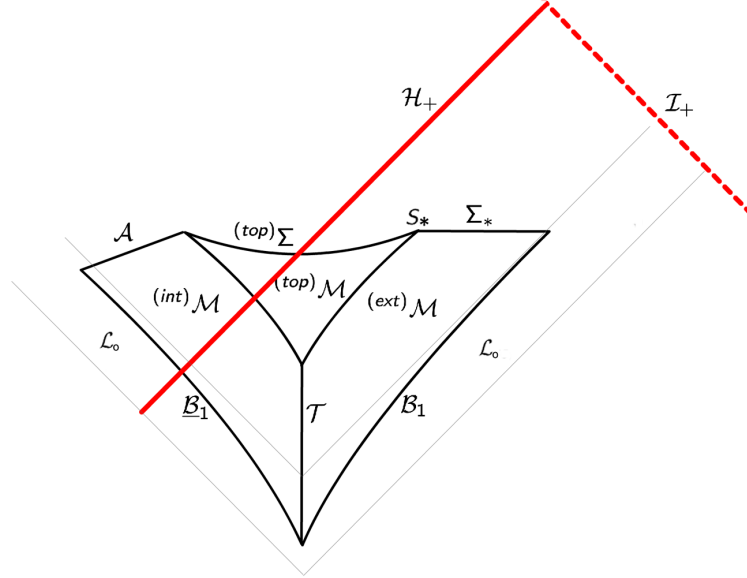


Figure 1.6: The Penrose diagram of a finite GCM admissible space-time $\mathcal{M} = {}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(top)}\mathcal{M} \cup {}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$. The spacetime is prescribed in the initial layer \mathcal{L}_0 and has $\mathcal{A} \cup {}^{(top)}\Sigma \cup \Sigma_*$ as future boundary, with Σ_* a spacelike “generally covariant modulated (GCM)” hypersurface. Its past boundary, $\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \underline{\mathcal{B}}_1$, is itself part of the construction. ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ is initialized by the GCM hypersurface Σ_* while ${}^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ is initialized on \mathcal{T} by the foliation induced by ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$. The main innovation is the GCM sphere S_* , defined and constructed with no reference to the initial data prescribed in the initial data layer \mathcal{L}_0 .

The capstone as well as the most original part of the entire construction is the sphere S_* , the future boundary of Σ_* , which verifies a set of rigid, extrinsic and intrinsic, conditions. Once Σ_* is specified the whole GCM admissible spacetime \mathcal{M} is determined by a more conventional construction, based on geometric transport type equations. More precisely ${}^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ can be determined from Σ_* by a specified outgoing foliation terminating in the

timelike boundary \mathcal{T} , $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ is determined from \mathcal{T} by a specified incoming one, and $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$ is a complement of $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup ^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ which makes \mathcal{M} a causal domain⁴⁹. The past boundary $\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \underline{\mathcal{B}}_1$ of \mathcal{M} , which is itself to be constructed, is included in the initial layer \mathcal{L}_0 in which the spacetime is assumed to be known, i.e. a small perturbation of a Kerr solution. The passage from the initial data specified on Σ_0 to the initial layer spacetime \mathcal{L}_0 is justified by D. Shen in [Shen:Kerr-ext] by arguments similar to those of [Kl-Ni1]-[Kl-Ni2], based on the mathematical methods and techniques introduced in [Ch-Kl].

Each of the spacetime regions $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$, $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$ come equipped with specific geometric structure including specific choices of null frames and functions such as r, u, \underline{u} . These are first defined on Σ_* and then transported to $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$, $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$.

Another important insight in the proof is the separate treatment of the quasi-invariant⁵⁰ extreme curvature components A, \underline{A} and all other Ricci and curvature components. In fact the entire hyperbolic character of the EV equations is carried over by A, \underline{A} , via the Teukolsky equations they verify, while all other quantities are controlled according to the following:

1. The control of A, \underline{A} and the GCM conditions on Σ_* . This allows us to control all other quantities on Σ_* .
2. The control of all quantities on Σ_* , except A , from their control on Σ_* and the ∇_4 transport equations they verify. It is essential here that the corresponding equations have a triangular structure!
3. The control of all quantities in $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ using the control of \underline{A} in $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$, the control of all quantities on \mathcal{T} , induced by the control on $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, and their ∇_3 transport equations. Once more the triangular structure of these equations important.
4. The control of all quantities in $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$ using their control on $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup ^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and ‘the ‘smallness’’ of $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$.

1.4.2 Main intermediary results

The proof of Theorem 1.1.1 is divided in nine separate steps, Theorems M0–M8. These steps are briefly described below, see section 3.7 in [K-S:Kerr] for the precise statements:

⁴⁹This is required because of the fact that, in our construction, the future boundary of $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup ^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ is not causal. By contrast, in [K-S:Schw], $\mathcal{M} = ^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} \cup ^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$.

⁵⁰i.e. quadratic invariant

1. *Theorem M0 (Control of the initial data in the bootstrap gauge).* The smallness of the initial perturbation is given in the frame of the initial data layer \mathcal{L}_0 . Theorem M0 transfers this control to the bootstrap gauge in the initial data layer.
2. *Theorems M1–M2 (Decay estimates for α (Theorem M1) and $\underline{\alpha}$ (Theorem M2)).* This is achieved using Teukolsky equations and a Chandrasekhar type transform in perturbations of Kerr.
3. *Theorems M3–M5 (Decay estimates for all curvature, connection and metric components).* This is done making use of the GCM conditions on Σ_* as well as the control of α and $\underline{\alpha}$ established in Theorems M1 and M2. The proof proceeds in the following order:
 - Theorem M3 provides the crucial decay estimates on Σ_* ,
 - Theorem M4 provides the decay estimates on $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$,
 - Theorem M5 provides the decay estimates on $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$.
4. *Theorems M6 (Existence of a bootstrap spacetime).* This theorem shows that there exists a GCM admissible spacetime satisfying the bootstrap assumptions, hence initializing the bootstrap procedure.
5. *Theorems M7 (Extension of the bootstrap region).* This theorem shows the existence of a slightly larger GCM admissible spacetime satisfying estimates improving the bootstrap assumptions on decay.
6. *Theorem M8 (Control of the top derivatives estimates).* This is based on an induction argument relative to the number of derivatives, energy-Morawetz estimates and the Maxwell like character of the Bianchi identities.

The paper [K-S:Kerr] provides the proof of Theorem M0, Theorems M3 to M7, and half of Theorem M8 (on the control of Ricci coefficients and metric components). The proof of Theorems M1 and M2, and of the other half of Theorem M8 (on the control of curvature components), based on nonlinear wave equations techniques, are provided in [GKS-2022]. The construction of GCM spheres in [K-S:GCM1] [K-S:GCM2], and of GCM hypersurfaces in [Shen] are used in the proof of Theorems M6 and M7 to construct respectively the terminal GCM sphere S_* and the last slice hypersurface Σ_* from S_* .

1.4.3 Main new ideas of the proof

Here is a short description of the main new ideas in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 and how they compare with ideas used in other nonlinear results.

GCM admissible spacetimes

- As mentioned already the crucial concept in the proof of Theorem 1.1.1 is that of a GCM admissible spacetime, whose construction is anchored by the GCM sphere S_* in Figure 1.6. GCM spheres⁵¹, are codimension 2 compact surfaces, unrelated to the initial conditions, on which specific geometric quantities take Schwarzschildian values (made possible by taking into account the full general covariance of the Einstein vacuum equations). In addition to these extrinsic conditions the sphere S_* is endowed with a choice of “effective”⁵² isothermal coordinates”, (θ, φ) verifying the following properties:
 - The metric on S_* takes the form $g = e^{2\phi} r^2 ((d\theta)^2 + \sin^2 \theta (d\varphi)^2)$.
 - The integrals on S_* of the $\ell = 1$ modes⁵³ $J^{(0)} := \cos \theta$, $J^{(-)} := \sin \theta \sin \varphi$ and $J^{(+)} := \sin \theta \cos \varphi$ vanish identically.
- Given the GCM sphere S_* and the effective isothermal coordinates (θ, φ) on it, our GCM procedure allows us, in particular, to define the mass m , the angular momentum a and a virtual axis of rotation which converge, in the limit, to the final parameters a_f, m_f and the axis of rotation of the final Kerr⁵⁴. We refer the reader to section 7.2 in [K-S:GCM2] for our intrinsic definition of a and of the virtual axis of symmetry on a GCM sphere.
- The boundary Σ_* , called a GCM hypersurface, is initialized at S_* and verifies additional conditions. In the polarized setting the first such construction appears in [K-S:Schw]. The general case needed for our theorem is treated in [Shen].
- The concepts of GCM spheres has appeared first in [K-S:Schw] in the context of polarized symmetry. The construction of GCM spheres, without any symmetries, in realistic perturbations of Kerr, is treated in [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2]⁵⁵.
- The main novelty of the GCM approach is that it relies on gauge conditions initialized at a far away co-dimension 2 sphere S_* , with no direct reference to the initial conditions. Previously known geometric constructions, such as in [Ch-Kl], [Kl-Ni1] and [Kl-L-R], were based on codimension-1 foliations constructed on spacelike or

⁵¹See the discussion in the introductions to [K-S:GCM1], [K-S:GCM2].

⁵²This is meant to insure the rigidity of the uniformization map, see [K-S:GCM2].

⁵³This is a natural generalization of $\ell = 1$ spherical harmonics.

⁵⁴Previous definitions of the angular momentum in General Relativity were given in [Rizzi], [Chen], [Chen2], see also [Sz] for a comprehensive discussion of the subject.

⁵⁵See also chapter 16 of [DHRT] in the particular case of perturbations of Schwarzschild, where the same concept appears instead under the name “teleological”.

null hypersurfaces and initialized on the initial hypersurface⁵⁶. Gauge conditions initialized from the future with no direct reference to the initial conditions, which was initiated in [K-S:Schw], have since been used in other works, see [Giorgi] [Graf] [DHRT].

- The GCM construction introduces the following new important conceptual difficulty. The foliation on Σ_* , induced from the far away sphere S_* , needs to be connected, somehow, to the initial conditions (i.e. the initial layer \mathcal{L}_0 in Figure 1.6). This is achieved in both [K-S:Schw] and [K-S:Kerr] by transporting⁵⁷ the sphere S_* to a sphere S_1 in the the initial layer and compare it, using the rigidity properties of the GCM conditions, to a sphere of the initial data layer. This induces a new foliation of the initial layer which differs substantially from the original one, due to a shift of the center of mass frame of the final black hole, known in the physics literature as a gravitational wave recoil⁵⁸.

Non integrability of the horizontal structure

As mentioned in section 1.1.1, the canonical horizontal structure induced by the principal null directions (e_3, e_4) in (1.1.4) of Kerr are non integrable. The lack of integrability is dealt with by the Newman-Penrose (NP) formalism by general null frames (e_3, e_4, e_1, e_2) , with e_1, e_2 a specified basis⁵⁹ of the horizontal structure induced by the null pair (e_3, e_4) . It thus reduces all calculations to equations involving the Christoffel symbols of the frame, as scalar quantities. This un-geometric feature of the formalism makes it difficult to use it in the nonlinear setting of the Kerr stability problem. Indeed complex calculations depend on higher derivatives of all connection coefficients of the NP frame rather than only those which are geometrically significant. This seriously affects and complicates the structure of non-linear corrections and makes it difficult to avoid artificial gauge type singularities⁶⁰. This difficulty is avoided in [Ch-Kl] by working with a tensorial approach adapted to S -foliations, i.e. $\{e_3, e_4\}^\perp$ coincides, at every point, with the tangent space to S .

In our work we extend, with minimal changes, the tensorial approach introduced in [Ch-Kl]

⁵⁶The first such construction appears in the proof of the nonlinear stability of the Minkowski space [Ch-Kl] where the “inverse lapse foliation” was constructed on the “last slice”, initialized at spacelike infinity i^0 . Similar constructions, where the last slice is null rather than spacelike, appear in [Kl-Nil] and [Kl-L-R].

⁵⁷That is, we transport the $\ell = 1$ modes of some quantities from S_* to S_1 , see section 8.3.1 in [K-S:Kerr].

⁵⁸We refer the reader to section 8.3 in [K-S:Kerr] for the details.

⁵⁹Or rather the complexified vectors $m = e_1 + ie_2$ and $\bar{m} = e_1 - ie_2$.

⁶⁰There are no smooth, global choices of a basis (e_1, e_2) . The choice (1.1.5) in Kerr, for example, is singular at $\theta = 0, \pi$.

to general non-integrable foliations. The idea is very simple: we define Ricci coefficients $\chi, \underline{\chi}, \eta, \underline{\eta}, \zeta, \underline{\zeta}, \xi, \underline{\xi}, \omega, \underline{\omega}$ exactly as in [Ch-Kl], relative to an arbitrary basis of vectors $(e_a)_{a=1,2}$ of $\mathcal{H} := \{e_3, e_4\}^\perp$. In particular, the null fundamental forms χ and $\underline{\chi}$, are given by

$$\underline{\chi}_{ab} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_3, e_b), \quad \chi_{ab} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_4, e_b).$$

Due to the lack of integrability of \mathcal{H} , the null fundamental forms χ and $\underline{\chi}$ are no longer symmetric. They can be both decomposed as follows

$$\chi_{ab} = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \delta_{ab} + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi + \hat{\chi}_{ab}, \quad \underline{\chi}_{ab} = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \delta_{ab} + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \hat{\underline{\chi}}_{ab},$$

where the new scalars ${}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi$, ${}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ measure the lack of integrability of the horizontal structure. The null curvature components are also defined as in [Ch-Kl],

$$\alpha_{ab} = \mathbf{R}_{a4b4}, \quad \beta_a = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}_{a434}, \quad \underline{\beta}_a = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}_{a334}, \quad \underline{\alpha}_{ab} = \mathbf{R}_{a3b3}, \quad \rho = \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{R}_{3434}, \quad {}^*\rho = \frac{1}{4} {}^* \mathbf{R}_{3434}.$$

The null structure and null Bianchi equations can then be derived as in the integrable case, see chapter 7 in [Ch-Kl]. The only new features are the presence of the scalars ${}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi$, ${}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ in the equations. Finally we note that the equations acquire additional simplicity if we pass to complex notations⁶¹,

$$\begin{aligned} A &:= \alpha + i {}^* \alpha, & B &:= \beta + i {}^* \beta, & P &:= \rho + i {}^* \rho, & \underline{B} &:= \underline{\beta} + i {}^* \underline{\beta}, & \underline{A} &:= \underline{\alpha} + i {}^* \underline{\alpha}, \\ X &:= \chi + i {}^* \chi, & \underline{X} &:= \underline{\chi} + i {}^* \underline{\chi}, & H &:= \eta + i {}^* \eta, & \underline{H} &:= \underline{\eta} + i {}^* \underline{\eta}, & Z &:= \zeta + i {}^* \zeta. \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.1}$$

Frame transformations and choice of frames

Given an arbitrary perturbation of Kerr, there is no a-priori reason to prefer an horizontal structure to any other one obtained from the first by another perturbation of the same size. It is thus essential that we consider all possible frame transformations from one horizontal structure (e_4, e_3, \mathcal{H}) to another one $(e'_4, e'_3, \mathcal{H}')$ together with the transformation formulas $\Gamma \rightarrow \Gamma'$, $R \rightarrow R'$ they generate. The most general transformation formulas between two null frames is given in Lemma 3.1 of [K-S:GCM1]. It depends on two horizontal 1-forms f, \underline{f} and a real scalar function λ and is given by

$$\begin{aligned} e'_4 &= \lambda \left(e_4 + f^b e_b + \frac{1}{4} |f|^2 e_3 \right), \\ e'_a &= \left(\delta_a^b + \frac{1}{2} \underline{f}_a f^b \right) e_b + \frac{1}{2} \underline{f}_a e_4 + \left(\frac{1}{2} f_a + \frac{1}{8} |f|^2 \underline{f}_a \right) e_3, \\ e'_3 &= \lambda^{-1} \left(\left(1 + \frac{1}{2} f \cdot \underline{f} + \frac{1}{16} |f|^2 |\underline{f}|^2 \right) e_3 + \left(\underline{f}^b + \frac{1}{4} |\underline{f}|^2 f^b \right) e_b + \frac{1}{4} |\underline{f}|^2 e_4 \right). \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.2}$$

⁶¹The dual here is taken with respect to the antisymmetric horizontal 2-tensor ϵ_{ab} .

The very important transformation formulas $\Gamma \rightarrow \Gamma'$, $R \rightarrow R'$ are given in Proposition 3.3 of [K-S:GCM1].

Definition 1.4.1. *A spacetime \mathcal{M} , endowed with an horizontal structure (e_3, e_4, \mathcal{H}) is said to be an $O(\epsilon)$ perturbation of Kerr if all quantities which vanish in Kerr are $O(\epsilon)$, and if all other quantities stay bounded in an $O(\epsilon)$ neighborhood of their corresponding⁶² Kerr values.*

The definition is, of course, ambiguous in the sense that any other horizontal structure $(e'_3, e'_4, \mathcal{H}')$ connected to (e_3, e_4, \mathcal{H}) by the frame transformation (1.4.2) with $f, \underline{f} = O(\epsilon)$ and $\lambda = 1 + O(\epsilon)$ is also an $O(\epsilon)$ -perturbation of Kerr. Nevertheless the definition is useful in that it brings to light the remarkable fact that the extreme curvature components are in fact $O(\epsilon^2)$ invariant. This can be easily seen from the transformation formulas

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda^{-2}\alpha' &= \alpha + (f\hat{\otimes}\beta - {}^*f\hat{\otimes}{}^*\beta) + \left(f\hat{\otimes}f - \frac{1}{2}{}^*f\hat{\otimes}{}^*f\right)\rho + \frac{3}{2}(f\hat{\otimes}{}^*f) {}^*\rho + O(\epsilon^3), \\ \lambda^2\underline{\alpha}' &= \underline{\alpha} + (\underline{f}\hat{\otimes}\underline{\beta} - {}^*\underline{f}\hat{\otimes}{}^*\underline{\beta}) + (\underline{f}\hat{\otimes}\underline{f} - \frac{1}{2}{}^*\underline{f}\hat{\otimes}{}^*\underline{f})\rho + \frac{3}{2}(\underline{f}\hat{\otimes}{}^*\underline{f}) {}^*\rho + O(\epsilon^3),\end{aligned}$$

see Proposition 2.2.3 of [K-S:Kerr].

Remark 1.4.2. *It is this fact that allows us to treat $\alpha, \underline{\alpha}$ differently from all other quantities. In addition to being less sensitive to frame transformations they do also verify wave equations, the Teukolsky equations, which decouple, in linear theory, from all other curvature components. See further discussion below.*

The case of $\mathcal{K}(a, m)$, $a \neq 0$ presents an interesting new feature which can be described as follows:

- To capture the simplicity induced by the principle null directions in Kerr it is natural to work with non-integrable frames. We do in fact define all our main quantities relative to frames for which all quantities which vanish in Kerr are of the size of the perturbation.
- A crucial aspect of all important results in GR, based on integrable S -foliations, is that one can rely on elliptic Hodge theory on each 2-surface S . This is no longer possible in context where our main quantities and the basic equations they verify are defined relative to non integrable frames. In our work we deal with this problem by passing back and forth, whenever needed, from the main non-integrable frame to a well chosen adapted integrable frame, according to the transformation formulas mentioned above.

⁶²To make this precise, we also need a definition of functions (r, θ) and of a complex 1-form \mathfrak{J} , see section ??.

Renormalization procedure and the canonical complex 1-form \mathfrak{J}

We first notice that our main complex quantities introduced in (1.4.1) take a particularly simple form in the principal null frame (1.1.4) of Kerr:

$$\begin{aligned} A = \underline{A} = B = \underline{B} = 0, \quad P &= -\frac{2m}{q^3}, \\ \widehat{X} = \underline{\widehat{X}} = 0, \quad \text{tr} X &= \frac{2}{q} \frac{\Delta}{|q|^2}, \quad \text{tr} \underline{X} = -\frac{2}{\bar{q}}, \\ Z &= \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, \quad H = \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, \quad \underline{H} = -\frac{a\bar{q}}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, \end{aligned} \quad (1.4.3)$$

where $q = r + ia \cos \theta$, and where the regular⁶³ complex 1-form \mathfrak{J} is given by

$$\mathfrak{J}_1 = \frac{i \sin \theta}{|q|}, \quad \mathfrak{J}_2 = \frac{\sin \theta}{|q|}, \quad (1.4.4)$$

see sections 2.4.2 and 2.4.3 in [K-S:Kerr]. In particular, the following holds for the complexified horizontal tensors of (1.4.1) in the principal null frame (1.1.4) of Kerr:

- the complex scalars P , $\text{tr} X$ and $\text{tr} \underline{X}$ are functions of r and $\cos \theta$,
- the non vanishing complex 1-forms H , \underline{H} and Z consist of functions of r and $\cos \theta$ multiplied by \mathfrak{J} ,
- the traceless symmetric complex 2-tensors A , \underline{A} , \widehat{X} and $\underline{\widehat{X}}$ vanish identically.

Based on that observation, for a given horizontal structure perturbing the one of Kerr, we can define a renormalization procedure by which, once we have⁶⁴ suitable constants (a, m) , suitable scalar functions (r, θ) , and a suitable complex 1-form \mathfrak{J} , and after subtracting the corresponding values in Kerr computed from $(a, m, r, \theta, \mathfrak{J})$ for all the Ricci and curvature coefficients, we obtain quantities which are first order in the perturbation.

More precisely, once (a, m) , (r, θ) and \mathfrak{J} have been chosen, we renormalize the quantities in (1.4.1) that do not vanish in Kerr as follows⁶⁵:

$$\begin{aligned} \check{P} &:= P + \frac{2m}{q^3}, \quad \widetilde{\text{tr} X} := \text{tr} X - \frac{2}{q} \frac{\Delta}{|q|^2}, \quad \widetilde{\text{tr} \underline{X}} := \text{tr} \underline{X} + \frac{2}{\bar{q}}, \\ \check{Z} &:= Z - \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, \quad \check{H} := H - \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, \quad \check{\underline{H}} := \underline{H} + \frac{a\bar{q}}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}. \end{aligned} \quad (1.4.5)$$

⁶³Note that \mathfrak{J} is regular including at $\theta = 0, \pi$.

⁶⁴The constants m and a are computed on our GCM sphere S_* , see section 1.4.3. r , θ and \mathfrak{J} are chosen on S_* , transported to Σ_* and then to \mathcal{M} . The horizontal structure is also defined first on Σ_* and then transported to \mathcal{M} .

⁶⁵The renormalization is written here in the case of a null pair (e_3, e_4) with an ingoing normalization.

Principal Geodesic and Principal Temporal structures

In addition to the GCM gauge conditions on Σ_* , we need to construct a gauge on \mathcal{M} which relates the non integrable horizontal structure to the scalars (r, θ) and the complex 1-form \mathfrak{J} . Two such gauges were introduced in [K-S:Kerr]:

- Principal Geodesic (PG) structure, which is a generalization of the geodesic foliation to non-integrable horizontal structures,
- Principal Temporal (PT) structure, which favors transport equations along a null direction.

The PG structure⁶⁶ is well suited for decay estimates, but fails to be well posed. Indeed, due to the lack of integrability of the horizontal structure, we cannot control the null structure equations⁶⁷ without a loss of derivative. The PT structure, on the other hand, is designed so that the loss of derivatives in the null structure equations, in the incoming or outgoing direction, is completely avoided. Note however that the PT structure is not well suited to the derivation of decay estimates on $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ where r can take arbitrary large values. In [K-S:Kerr] we work with both gauge conditions, depending on the goal we want to achieve, and rely on the transformation formulas (1.4.2) to pass from one to the other.

In the outgoing normalization both the outgoing PG and PT structures consist of a choice (e_3, e_4, \mathcal{H}) , with e_4 null geodesic, together with a scalar functions r, θ and a complex 1-form \mathfrak{J} such that $e_4(r) = 1$, $e_4(\theta) = 0$, $\nabla_4(q\mathfrak{J}) = 0$ where $q = r + ia \cos \theta$. In addition:

1. In a PG structure the gradient of r , given by $N = \mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta} \partial_\beta r \partial_\alpha$, is perpendicular to \mathcal{H} ,
2. In a PT structure $\underline{H} = -\frac{a\bar{q}}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}$, i.e. $\widetilde{\underline{H}} = 0$ in view of (2.1.1).

A similar definition of incoming PG and PT structures is obtained by interchanging the roles of e_3, e_4 . Note that both structures still need to be initialized. The outgoing PG and PT structures of $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ are both initialized on Σ_* from the GCM frame of Σ_* , while the ingoing PT structures of $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and $^{(top)}\mathcal{M}$ are initialized on the the timelike hypersurface \mathcal{T} , see Figure 1.6, using the data induced by the outgoing structures.

⁶⁶Note that, in the integrable context of [K-S:Schw], the PG structure coincides with the standard (integrable) geodesic foliation used there. Thus the PG structure, defined in [K-S:Kerr], is a suitable generalization to the non-integrable case of perturbations of Kerr.

⁶⁷In integrable situation, like in the case of S -foliations, the Hodge systems on the leaves of the S -foliation allows us to avoid the loss.

Control of the extreme curvature components A, \underline{A}

It was already observed by Teukolsky that, in linear theory, the extreme components of the curvature are both gauge invariant and verify decoupled wave equations⁶⁸. In our nonlinear context this translates to the statement that the horizontal 2-tensors A, \underline{A} , defined relative to an $O(\epsilon)$ perturbation of the principal frame of Kerr, are $O(\epsilon^2)$ -invariant, relative to $O(\epsilon)$ frame transformations⁶⁹, and verify tensorial wave equations of the form

$$\dot{\square}_2 A + L[A] = \text{Err}(\check{\Gamma}, \check{R}), \quad \dot{\square}_2 \underline{A} + \underline{L}[\underline{A}] = \underline{\text{Err}}(\check{\Gamma}, \check{R}). \quad (1.4.6)$$

Here $\dot{\square}_2$ denotes the wave operator on horizontal symmetric traceless 2-tensors, L and \underline{L} are linear first order operators and $\check{\Gamma}, \check{R}$ denote the linearized Ricci and curvature coefficients. The error terms $\text{Err}(\check{\Gamma}, \check{R}), \underline{\text{Err}}(\check{\Gamma}, \check{R})$ are nonlinear expressions in $\check{\Gamma}, \check{R}$.

In linear theory, i.e. when \mathbf{g} is the Kerr metric and the error terms are not present, these equations have been treated by [DHR] in Schwarzschild⁷⁰ and by [Ma] and [DHR-Kerr] in slowly rotating⁷¹ Kerr, i.e. $|a|/m \ll 1$. More precisely both results derive realistic decay estimates for A, \underline{A} . The methods are however not robust. Indeed, a crucial ingredient in the proof, the Energy-Morawetz estimates, is based on separation of variables. The control of A and \underline{A} in perturbations of Kerr in [GKS-2022] contains the following new features:

- *Derivation of the gRW equation.* The derivation of the generalized Regge-Wheeler equations in Kerr, in [Ma] and [DHR-Kerr], is done starting with the complex, scalar, Teukolsky equations, derived via the NP, or GHP formalism, by applying a Chandrasekhar type transformation. In part I of [GKS-2022] we extend their derivation, using our non-integrable horizontal formalism, to perturbations of Kerr. By contrast with [Ma], [DHR-Kerr], we derive gRW equations for the horizontal symmetric traceless 2-tensors⁷² $\mathbf{q}, \underline{\mathbf{q}}$, rather than for complex scalars. The main difficulty here is to make sure that the non-linear error terms verify a favorable structure.
- *Nonlinear error terms.* The control of the nonlinear terms and their associated null structure was already understood in perturbations of Schwarzschild in [K-S:Schw] and is extended to perturbations of Kerr in [GKS-2022].

⁶⁸See discussion in section 1.2.5.

⁶⁹This means that $f, \underline{f}, \lambda - 1$ are $O(\epsilon)$ in the transformation formulas (1.4.2).

⁷⁰See discussion in section 1.3.3.

⁷¹See discussion in section 1.3.4.

⁷²Derived from A, \underline{A} , see Definition 5.2.2 and 5.3.3 in [GKS-2022].

- *Energy-Morawetz.* To derive energy-morawetz estimates for A, \underline{A} in Part II of [GKS-2022] we vastly extend the pioneering idea of Andersson and Blue [A-B], based on commutations with \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z} and the second order Carter operator \mathcal{C} , developed in the context of the scalar wave equation in slowly rotating Kerr, to treat our tensorial Teukolsky and gRW equations in perturbations of Kerr.

Comments on the full sub-extremal range

Though the full sub-extremal range $|a| < m$ remains open we remark that a large part of our work does not require the smallness of $|a|/m$. This is the case for [K-S:GCM1] [K-S:GCM2] [Shen] and [K-S:Kerr]. In fact the smallness assumption is only needed in [GKS-2022], mostly in the derivation of the main Energy-Morawetz estimates in parts II and III.

Chapter 2

Introduction III.

In these lectures I will concentrate on the results proved in [GKS-2022] more precisely on the proof of Theorems M1 and M2 as well the curvature estimates of Theorem M8, which were stated without proof in sections 3.7.1 and 9.4.7 of [K-S:Kerr].

2.1 Geometric set-up

2.1.1 Spacetime \mathcal{M}

The geometric setting of our work consists of an Einstein vacuum Lorentzian manifold $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$ with boundaries equipped with the following:

1. A regular horizontal structure defined by a null pair (e_3, e_4) , and the space \mathcal{H} orthogonal to it. Note that the horizontal structure considered here is not integrable¹. The formalism of non-integrable horizontal structures, on which of our entire work is based, is developed in full in Chapter 2 of [GKS-2022].
2. Two constants (a, m) with $|a| < m$, two scalar functions (r, θ) and a time function τ on \mathcal{M} . In addition, \mathcal{M} possesses a horizontal complex 1-form² \mathfrak{J} , used to linearize all horizontal 1-forms in perturbations of Kerr.

¹In other words, the space \mathcal{H} forms a non integrable distribution. The formalism was originally mentioned in [I-Kl] and developed in [GKS-2020].

²By this, we mean $\mathfrak{J} = j + i * j$ where j is a real horizontal 1-form. In Kerr this quantity is specifically introduced in Definition ??.

3. Boundaries given by $\partial\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{A} \cup \Sigma(\tau_*) \cup \Sigma_* \cup \Sigma(1)$ where

- \mathcal{A} is the spacelike hypersurface given by

$$\mathcal{A} := \mathcal{M} \cap \{r = r_+(1 - \delta_{\mathcal{H}})\}, \quad r_+ := m + \sqrt{m^2 - a^2},$$

where $\delta_{\mathcal{H}} > 0$ a sufficiently small constant.

- $\Sigma(1)$ and $\Sigma(\tau_*)$ denote the spacelike level hypersurfaces $\tau = 1$ and $\tau = \tau_*$, with $\tau_* > 1$ and $1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_*$ on \mathcal{M} .
- Σ_* is a uniformly spacelike hypersurface connecting $\Sigma(1)$ to $\Sigma(\tau_*)$.

4. Two spacetime regions $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$ such that

$$\mathcal{M} = ^{(int)}\mathcal{M} \cup ^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}, \quad ^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}_{r \geq r_0}, \quad ^{(int)}\mathcal{M} = \mathcal{M}_{r \leq r_0},$$

where $r_0 \gg m$ is a sufficiently large constant.

Remark 2.1.1. *Note that the spacetime \mathcal{M} considered above does not require any specific gauge conditions. Indeed, in this paper, we only provide gauge independent curvature estimates. The control of Ricci coefficients is provided in [K-S:Kerr] where specific gauge choices are made, see section 2.3 and 2.8 for the definitions of PG and PT structures in [K-S:Kerr]. We also note that the scalar functions r, θ and τ are not aligned with the frame, i.e. unlike in the stability of Minkowski space, in [Ch-Kl], and all other subsequent works³, our frames are in no way adapted to foliations.*

The function τ is used to define the regions of integrations $\mathcal{M}(\tau_1, \tau_2)$ where $\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$. We also define the following significant regions of \mathcal{M} , see Definition ??.

Definition 2.1.2. *We define the following regions of \mathcal{M} :*

1. *We define the trapping region of \mathcal{M} to be the set*

$$\mathcal{M}_{trap} := \mathcal{M} \cap \left\{ \frac{|\mathcal{T}|}{r^3} \leq \delta_{trap} \right\}, \quad \delta_{trap} = \frac{1}{10},$$

where $\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{T} = r^3 - 3mr^2 + a^2r + ma^2$. This is the region that contains all trapped null geodesics, for sufficiently small a/m .

2. *We denote \mathcal{M}_{trgp} the complement to the trapping region \mathcal{M}_{trap} .*

3. *We denote $\mathcal{M}_{red} := \mathcal{M} \cap \{r \leq r_+(1 + 2\delta_{red})\}$, for a sufficiently small constant $\delta_{red} > 0$, the region where the red shift effect of the horizon is manifest.*

³We note however that in the treatment of the Regge Wheeler equation in Chapter 10 of [K-S:Schw] the foliations used are also not aligned with the frame.

2.1.2 Ricci and curvature coefficients

Definition of the Ricci and curvature coefficients

We can define, with respect to the horizontal structure associated to (e_3, e_4) , connection and curvature coefficients similar to those in the integrable case, as in [Ch-Kl],

$$\begin{aligned}\underline{\chi}_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_3, e_b), & \chi_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_4, e_b), & \underline{\xi}_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_3 e_3, e_a), & \xi_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_4 e_4, e_a), \\ \underline{\omega} &= \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_3 e_3, e_4), & \omega &= \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_4 e_4, e_3), & \underline{\eta}_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_4 e_3, e_a), & \eta_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_3 e_4, e_a), \\ \zeta_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_4, e_3),\end{aligned}$$

$$\alpha_{ab} = \mathbf{R}_{a4b4}, \quad \beta_a = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}_{a434}, \quad \underline{\beta}_a = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}_{a334}, \quad \underline{\alpha}_{ab} = \mathbf{R}_{a3b3}, \quad \rho = \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{R}_{3434}, \quad {}^* \rho = \frac{1}{4} {}^* \mathbf{R}_{3434},$$

and derive the corresponding null structure and null Bianchi equations. The non-symmetric 2 tensors $\chi, \underline{\chi}$ are decomposed as follows.

$$\chi_{ab} = \widehat{\chi}_{ab} + \frac{1}{2} \delta_{ab} \text{tr } \chi + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} {}^{(a)} \text{tr } \chi, \quad \underline{\chi}_{ab} = \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{ab} + \frac{1}{2} \delta_{ab} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} {}^{(a)} \text{tr } \underline{\chi},$$

where the scalars $\text{tr } \chi$, $\text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ and ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \chi$, ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ are given by

$$\text{tr } \chi := \delta^{ab} \chi_{ab}, \quad \text{tr } \underline{\chi} := \delta^{ab} \underline{\chi}_{ab}, \quad {}^{(a)} \text{tr } \chi := \epsilon^{ab} \chi_{ab}, \quad {}^{(a)} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} := \epsilon^{ab} \underline{\chi}_{ab}.$$

Remark 2.1.3. *The non integrability of (e_3, e_4) corresponds to the non vanishing ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \chi$ and ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$. A well known example of a non integrable null frame, is the principal null frame of Kerr for which ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \chi$ and ${}^{(a)} \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ are indeed non trivial, see section ??.*

2.1.3 Basic equations and complexification

The null structure and null Bianchi equations verified by the Ricci and curvature coefficients are derived in sections 2.2. These equations simplify considerably, see section 2.4, by introducing complex notations:

$$\begin{aligned}A &:= \alpha + i {}^* \alpha, & B &:= \beta + i {}^* \beta, & P &:= \rho + i {}^* \rho, & \underline{B} &:= \underline{\beta} + i {}^* \underline{\beta}, & \underline{A} &:= \underline{\alpha} + i {}^* \underline{\alpha}, \\ X &:= \chi + i {}^* \chi, & \underline{X} &:= \underline{\chi} + i {}^* \underline{\chi}, & H &:= \eta + i {}^* \eta, & \underline{H} &:= \underline{\eta} + i {}^* \underline{\eta}, & Z &:= \zeta + i {}^* \zeta, \\ \Xi &:= \xi + i {}^* \xi, & \underline{\Xi} &:= \underline{\xi} + i {}^* \underline{\xi},\end{aligned}$$

where $*$ denotes the Hodge dual. In particular, note that $\text{tr}X = \text{tr}\chi - i^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi$, $\text{tr}\underline{X} = \text{tr}\underline{\chi} - i^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}$, while \widehat{X} and $\widehat{\underline{X}}$ denote the symmetric traceless part of X and \underline{X} respectively. Further useful simplifications of the equations can be obtained with the help of conformally invariant derivative operators introduced in section 2.2.9.

$$\begin{aligned} \check{P} &:= P + \frac{2m}{q^3}, & \widetilde{\text{tr}X} &:= \text{tr}X - \frac{2}{q} \frac{\Delta}{|q|^2}, & \widetilde{\text{tr}\underline{X}} &:= \text{tr}\underline{X} + \frac{2}{\bar{q}}, \\ \check{Z} &:= Z - \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, & \check{H} &:= H - \frac{aq}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}, & \check{H} &:= \underline{H} + \frac{a\bar{q}}{|q|^2} \mathfrak{J}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.1}$$

Notation (Γ_g, Γ_b) for Ricci coefficients

We group the linearized Ricci coefficients in two subsets reflecting their expected decay properties, see section 4.1.2 [GKS-2022]:

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_g &:= \left\{ \widetilde{\text{tr}X}, \widehat{X}, \widetilde{\text{tr}\underline{X}}, \check{H}, \check{Z}, \check{\omega}, \Xi \right\}, \\ \Gamma_b &:= \left\{ \widehat{\underline{X}}, \check{H}, \underline{\omega}, \Xi \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

Remark 2.1.4. *In fact, (Γ_g, Γ_b) also include the linearization of the derivatives of the scalar functions $(r, \cos\theta)$, and of the complex horizontal 1-form \mathfrak{J} , see section 4.1.2.*

The justification for the above decompositions has to do with the expected decay properties of the linearized components in perturbations of Kerr, with respect to τ and r . See discussion in section 2.2.3 below.

More precisely,

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathfrak{d}^{\leq s} \Gamma_g| &\lesssim \epsilon \min \left\{ r^{-2} \tau^{-1/2-\delta_{dec}}, r^{-1} \tau^{-1-\delta_{dec}} \right\}, \\ |\mathfrak{d}^{\leq s} \Gamma_b| &\lesssim \epsilon r^{-1} \tau^{-1-\delta_{dec}}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.1.2}$$

for a small constant $\delta_{dec} > 0$, where $\mathfrak{d} = \{\nabla_3, r\nabla_4, r\nabla\}$ denotes weighted derivatives, and $\epsilon > 0$ is a sufficiently small bootstrap constant. We note also that the curvature components $\underline{A}, r\underline{B}$ behave in the same way as Γ_b , while $r(\check{P}, B, A)$ behave like Γ_g . Moreover A, B get the optimal decay in powers of r , i.e.

$$|A|, |B| \lesssim \epsilon r^{-7/2-\delta_{dec}}.$$

2.2 Main theorems

We refer to section 3.4 of [K-S:Kerr] for a precise statement of our Main Theorem concerning the stability of Kerr and to section 3.7 of [K-S:Kerr] the main steps in the proof. Here we concentrate on a simplified set of assumptions needed for the proof of Theorems M1, M2 and the curvature estimates for Theorem M8.

2.2.1 Smallness constants

The following constants are involved in the statement of Theorems M0-M8, see section 3.4. in [K-S:Kerr]:

- The constants $m_0 > 0$ and $|a_0| \ll m_0$ are the mass and the angular momentum of the Kerr solution relative to which our initial perturbation is measured.
- The integer k_{large} which corresponds to the maximum number of derivatives of the solution.
- The size of the initial data perturbation is measured by $\epsilon_0 > 0$.
- The size of the bootstrap assumption norms are measured by $\epsilon > 0$.
- $r_0 > 0$ is tied to $^{(int)}\mathcal{M} \cap ^{(ext)}\mathcal{M} = \{r = r_0\}$.
- The constant $\delta_{\mathcal{H}}$ tied to the definition of $\mathcal{A} = \{r = r_+(1 - \delta_{\mathcal{H}})\}$.
- δ_{dec} is tied to decay estimates in τ for the linearized quantities of section ??.

These constants are chosen such that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 < \delta_{\mathcal{H}}, \delta_{dec} &\ll \min\{m_0 - |a_0|, 1\}, \\ r_0 &\gg \max\{m_0, 1\}, \quad k_{large} \gg \frac{1}{\delta_{dec}}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.1}$$

Then, ϵ and ϵ_0 are chosen such that

$$0 < \epsilon_0, \epsilon \ll \min \left\{ \delta_{dec}, \frac{1}{r_0}, \frac{1}{k_{large}}, m_0 - |a_0|, 1 \right\}, \tag{2.2.2}$$

$$\epsilon_0, \epsilon \ll |a_0| \quad \text{in the case } a_0 \neq 0, \tag{2.2.3}$$

and

$$\epsilon = \epsilon_0^{\frac{2}{3}}. \quad (2.2.4)$$

Also, we introduce the integer k_{small} which corresponds to the number of derivatives for which the solution satisfies decay estimates. It is related to k_{large} by

$$k_{small} = \left\lfloor \frac{1}{2} k_{large} \right\rfloor + 1. \quad (2.2.5)$$

From now on, in the rest of the paper, \lesssim means bounded by a constant depending only on geometric universal constants (such as Sobolev embeddings, elliptic estimates,...) as well as the constants

$$m_0, a_0, \delta_{\mathcal{H}}, \delta_{dec}, r_0, k_{large},$$

but not on ϵ and ϵ_0 .

2.2.2 Initial data assumptions

The initial data norm denoted by \mathfrak{J}_k , measures the size of the perturbation from Kerr at $\tau = 1$, for the top k derivatives of the curvature tensor⁴.

Definition 2.2.1. *We define the following initial data norms on Σ_1*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{J}_k := & \sup_{S \subset \Sigma_1} r^{\frac{5}{2} + \delta_B} \left(\|\mathfrak{d}^k(A, B)\|_{L^2(S)} + \|\mathfrak{d}^k B\|_{L^2(S)} \right) \\ & + \sup_{S \subset \Sigma_1} \left(r^2 \|\mathfrak{d}^k \check{P}\|_{L^2(S)} + r \|\mathfrak{d}^k \underline{B}\|_{L^2(S)} + \|\mathfrak{d}^k \underline{A}\|_{L^2(S)} \right). \end{aligned} \quad (2.2.6)$$

In [GKS-2022] we make the following assumption on the control of the initial data norm⁵

$$\mathfrak{J}_{k_{large}+7} \leq \epsilon_0. \quad (2.2.7)$$

The bound (2.2.7) will be used both in Part II and Part III as assumptions on the initial data.

⁴The definition used here differs slightly from the one in Definition 9.4.9 in [K-S:Kerr], but easily follows from it by a local existence argument.

⁵The original assumption on initial data in [K-S:Kerr] is stated for $k_{large} + 10$ derivatives, see (3.4.7) in that paper, in a given frame of an initial data layer $\mathcal{L}(a_0, m_0)$. The control in the frames used in this paper are obtained in Theorem M0 of section 3.7.1 in [K-S:Kerr], and in Theorem 9.4.12 in [K-S:Kerr] for $k_{large} + 7$ derivatives.

2.2.3 Quantitative assumptions on the spacetime \mathcal{M}

The quantitative assumptions made in this article depend on a large positive integer k_L , representing the maximal number of derivatives for the linearized Ricci and curvature coefficients $(\check{\Gamma}, \check{R})$ which are required in the proof. There are in fact two types of assumptions:

1. For the proof of Theorem M1 and M2 of [K-S:Kerr], we rely on the following pointwise quantitative assumptions on Γ_b and Γ_g , for $k \leq k_L$,

$$\begin{aligned} \left(r^2 \tau^{\frac{1}{2} + \delta_{dec}} + r \tau^{1 + \delta_{dec}} \right) |\mathfrak{d}^{\leq k} \Gamma_g| &\leq \epsilon, \\ r \tau^{1 + \delta_{dec}} |\mathfrak{d}^{\leq k} \Gamma_b| &\leq \epsilon. \end{aligned} \quad (2.2.8)$$

for a small constant $\delta_{dec} > 0$, where $\mathfrak{d} = \{\nabla_3, r\nabla_4, r\nabla\}$ denotes weighted derivatives, and $\epsilon > 0$ is a sufficiently small bootstrap constant.

2. For the proof of the curvature estimates of Theorem M8 of [K-S:Kerr], we introduce weighted energy-Morawetz type norms for curvature and Ricci coefficients, denoted respectively by \mathfrak{R}_k and \mathfrak{G}_k , see section 13.5 for the precise definition. We then rely on the following quantitative assumptions on \mathfrak{R}_k and \mathfrak{G}_k

$$\mathfrak{R}_k + \mathfrak{G}_k \leq \epsilon, \quad 0 \leq k \leq k_L, \quad (2.2.9)$$

as well as the following pointwise quantitative assumptions on Γ_b and Γ_g

$$r^2 |\mathfrak{d}^k \Gamma_g| + r |\mathfrak{d}^k \Gamma_b| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{\tau_{trap}^{1 + \delta_{dec}}}, \quad 0 \leq k \leq \frac{k_L}{2}, \quad (2.2.10)$$

where the scalar function τ_{trap} defined by

$$\tau_{trap} := \begin{cases} 1 + \tau & \text{on } \mathcal{M}_{trap}, \\ 1 & \text{on } \mathcal{M}_{trap}^c. \end{cases}$$

The integer k_L is chosen as follows:

- For the proof of Theorem M1 and M2 of [K-S:Kerr] (restated in Theorem 2.2.2 and 2.2.3 below), we choose $k_L = k_{small} + 120$. Then, (2.2.8) follows by interpolation from the bootstrap assumptions (3.5.1) (3.5.2) in [K-S:Kerr] together with the construction of the global frame in section 3.6.3 of [K-S:Kerr], where (3.5.1) in [K-S:Kerr] are bootstrap assumptions on boundedness for $k \leq k_{large}$ derivatives, and (3.5.2) in [K-S:Kerr] are bootstrap assumptions on decay for $k \leq k_{small}$ derivatives.

- For the proof of the curvature estimates of Theorem M8 (see Theorem 2.2.4 below), we choose $k_L = k_{large} + 7$. Then, (2.2.9) follows from the bootstrap assumptions (9.4.20) of [K-S:Kerr] together with the construction of the global frame in section 9.4 of [K-S:Kerr]. Also, (2.2.10) is a non sharp consequence of the bootstrap assumptions (9.4.22) in [K-S:Kerr] together with the construction of the global frame in section 9.4 of [K-S:Kerr].

2.2.4 Statement of the main theorems

Recall that the nonlinear stability of the Kerr family for small angular momentum, i.e $|a|/m \ll 1$, is stated in the Main Theorem in section 3.4 of [K-S:Kerr]. The proof is divided in a sequence of nine intermediary steps, called Theorem M0–M8, see section 3.7 in [K-S:Kerr]. The goal of the present paper is to provide the proof of Theorems M1 and M2 as well the curvature estimates of Theorem M8, which were stated without proof in Theorem 9.4.15 of [K-S:Kerr] and all involve curvature estimates of hyperbolic type.

Theorems M1 and M2

In what follows, we restate⁶ Theorem M1 and M2, see section 3.7.1 in [K-S:Kerr].

Theorem 2.2.2 (Theorem M1 in [K-S:Kerr]). *Assume that the spacetime \mathcal{M} as defined in section 2.1.1 verifies the quantitative assumptions (2.2.8), and the assumption (2.2.7) on initial data. Then, if $\epsilon_0 > 0$ is sufficiently small, there exists $\delta_{extra} > \delta_{dec}$ such that we have the following estimates in \mathcal{M} , for all $k \leq k_L - 20$,*

$$\sup_{\mathcal{M}} \left(r^2 \tau^{1+\delta_{extra}} + r^3 (2r + \tau)^{\frac{1}{2}+\delta_{extra}} \right) \left(|\mathfrak{d}^k A| + r |\mathfrak{d}^{k-1} \nabla_3 A| \right) \lesssim \epsilon_0.$$

Also, the quantity \mathfrak{q} introduced below, see section 2.3.1, satisfies, for all $k \leq k_L - 20$,

$$\int_{\Sigma_*(\geq \tau)} |\nabla_3 \mathfrak{d}^{k-1} \mathfrak{q}|^2 \lesssim \epsilon_0^2 \tau^{-2-2\delta_{extra}}.$$

Theorem 2.2.3 (Theorem M2 in [K-S:Kerr]). *In addition to the assumptions of Theorem 2.2.2, we make the following assumption⁷ on Σ_**

$$\min_{\Sigma_*} r \geq \delta_* \epsilon_0^{-1} \tau_*^{1+\delta_{dec}} \tag{2.2.11}$$

⁶A more precise statement is given in Theorems ?? and ??.

⁷This is the dominant condition of r on Σ_* , see (3.4.5) in [K-S:Kerr].

for some small universal constant $\delta_* > 0$. Then, we have the following decay estimates for \underline{A} along Σ_*

$$\max_{0 \leq k \leq k_L - 40} \int_{\Sigma_*} \tau^{2+2\delta_{dec}} |\mathfrak{d}^k \underline{A}|^2 \lesssim \epsilon_0^2.$$

Both results are proved in Part II of [GKS-2022].

Curvature estimates in Theorem M8

Theorem M8 in [K-S:Kerr] is proved through an iteration procedure described in section 9.4.7 of [K-S:Kerr]. The control of the Ricci coefficients have been derived in Chapter 9 of [K-S:Kerr]. In the present paper, we derive the remaining estimates for the proof of Theorem M8, i.e the estimates for curvature stated in Theorem 9.4.15 of [K-S:Kerr]. To this end, we introduce weighed L^2 type norms \mathfrak{R}_k and \mathfrak{G}_k respectively for curvature and Ricci coefficients⁸, and decompose \mathfrak{R}_k and \mathfrak{G}_k in their restrictions $^{(int)}\mathfrak{R}$, $^{(int)}\mathfrak{G}$ to $^{(int)}\mathcal{M}$ and $^{(ext)}\mathfrak{R}$, $^{(ext)}\mathfrak{G}$ to $^{(ext)}\mathcal{M}$, see section 13.5 in [GKS-2022] for the precise definition of these norms. In view of the results in Chapter 9 of [K-S:Kerr], the proof of Theorem 8 reduces to the following result on the control of the curvature norm \mathfrak{R}_k .

Theorem 2.2.4 (Theorem 9.4.15 of [K-S:Kerr]). *Assume that the spacetime \mathcal{M} as defined in section 2.1.1 verifies the quantitative assumptions (2.2.9) (2.2.10) for $k_L = k_{large} + 7$, and the assumption (2.2.7) on initial data. Let $k_{small} - 1 \leq J \leq k_{large} + 6$. Then, we have the following boundedness estimates for all components of curvature*

$$\begin{aligned} ^{(int)}\mathfrak{R}_{J+1}^2 &\lesssim r_0^{18} \left(\epsilon_J (\mathfrak{G}_{J+1} + \mathfrak{R}_{J+1}) + \epsilon_J^2 + \epsilon_0^2 \right) + |a| r_0^3 \mathfrak{G}_{J+1}^2 \\ &\quad + r_0^{\frac{27}{4}} \mathfrak{G}_{J+1}^{\frac{3}{2}} \left(\epsilon_0 + \sqrt{\epsilon_J} \sqrt{\mathfrak{G}_{J+1} + \mathfrak{R}_{J+1}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \\ ^{(ext)}\mathfrak{R}_{J+1}^2 &\lesssim r_0^{3+\delta_B} ^{(int)}\mathfrak{R}_{J+1}^2 + r_0^{-\delta_B} ^{(ext)}\mathfrak{G}_{J+1}^2 + \epsilon_0^2, \end{aligned}$$

where the constant in \lesssim is independent of r_0 and ϵ_J is such that $\mathfrak{G}_J + \mathfrak{R}_J \leq \epsilon_J$.

Part III of [GKS-2022] is entirely dedicated to the proof of Theorem 2.2.4.

⁸As well as derivatives of $(r, \cos \theta)$ and \mathfrak{J} .

2.3 Derivation and estimates for the gRW equations

2.3.1 Teukolsky and gRW equations in our approach

In section 2.1.1 we derive, using the formalism developed in the previous sections⁹, the nonlinear version of the Teukolsky equations for A and \underline{A} of the form

$$\mathcal{L}[A] = \text{Err}[\mathcal{L}[A]], \quad \underline{\mathcal{L}}[\underline{A}] = \text{Err}[\underline{\mathcal{L}}[\underline{A}]], \quad (2.3.1)$$

where $\mathcal{L}, \underline{\mathcal{L}}$ are second order tensorial wave operators on our spacetime \mathcal{M} , and where $\text{Err}[\mathcal{L}[A]]$, $\text{Err}[\underline{\mathcal{L}}[\underline{A}]]$ are nonlinear errors depending on all linearized Ricci and curvature coefficients.

Just as in linear theory, to be able to control A, \underline{A} we need to perform transformations $\mathfrak{q} = \mathfrak{q}[A]$, $\underline{\mathfrak{q}} = \underline{\mathfrak{q}}[\underline{A}]$, which take solutions A, \underline{A} of the Teukolsky equation (2.3.1) into solutions of nonlinear, tensorial, versions of Regge-Wheeler equations, which we call gRW equations.

In the setting of polarized perturbations of Schwarzschild [K-S:Schw], the derivation of the RW equation for¹⁰ \mathfrak{q} was performed using null frames, which had the feature to be both adapted to an integrable foliation and diagonalize the curvature tensor up to error terms. One could thus rely on the geometric formalism developed in the context of the proof of the nonlinear stability of Minkowski space [Ch-Kl]. In Chapter 2 of [GKS-2022] we rely on an extension of the formalism of [Ch-Kl] which allows for non integrable null frames. Our results on the derivation of gRW in perturbations of Kerr are obtained in Chapter 5 of [GKS-2022] and can be summarized as follows.

Theorem 2.3.1. *There exist complex 2 tensors $\mathfrak{q}, \underline{\mathfrak{q}} \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ derived from A, \underline{A} as follows,*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{q} &= q\bar{q}^3 \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 A + C_1 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 A + C_2 A \right), \\ \underline{\mathfrak{q}} &= \bar{q}q^3 \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{A} + \underline{C}_1 {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{A} + \underline{C}_2 \underline{A} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.2)$$

⁹This follows from the complex form of the null Bianchi identities, see Proposition 3.4.17.

¹⁰Note that [K-S:Schw] did not rely on $\underline{\mathfrak{q}}$.

where $q = r + ia \cos \theta$ ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3$, ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4$ are conformal derivatives, see section ??, and

$$\begin{aligned} C_1 &= 2\text{tr} \underline{\chi} - 2 \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2}{\text{tr} \underline{\chi}} - 4i {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}, \\ C_2 &= \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 - 4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 + \frac{3}{2} \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^4}{\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2} + i \left(-2\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 4 \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^3}{\text{tr} \underline{\chi}} \right), \\ \underline{C}_1 &= 2\text{tr} \chi - 2 \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi^2}{\text{tr} \chi} - 4i {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi, \\ \underline{C}_2 &= \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \chi^2 - 4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi^2 + \frac{3}{2} \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi^4}{\text{tr} \chi^2} + i \left(-2\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 4 \frac{{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi^3}{\text{tr} \chi} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.3)$$

which verify gRW equations of the form¹¹

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}_2 \mathbf{q} - i \frac{4a \cos \theta}{|q|^2} \nabla_{\mathbf{T}} \mathbf{q} - V \mathbf{q} &= L_{\mathbf{q}}[A] + \text{Err}[\dot{\square}_2 \mathbf{q}], \\ \dot{\square}_2 \underline{\mathbf{q}} + i \frac{4a \cos \theta}{|q|^2} \nabla_{\mathbf{T}} \underline{\mathbf{q}} - \underline{V} \underline{\mathbf{q}} &= L_{\underline{\mathbf{q}}}[\underline{A}] + \text{Err}[\dot{\square}_2 \underline{\mathbf{q}}], \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.4)$$

with \mathbf{T} an appropriately defined deformation of the stationary Killing v -field in Kerr. The potentials V, \underline{V} are real and positive and the terms $L_{\mathbf{q}}[A], L_{\underline{\mathbf{q}}}[\underline{A}]$ are linear in A , resp \underline{A} and have important specific properties described in detail in sections 5.2.3 and 5.3.4 of [GKS-2022]. Finally the error terms $\text{Err}[\dot{\square}_2 \mathbf{q}], \text{Err}[\dot{\square}_2 \underline{\mathbf{q}}]$ depending on all linearized Ricci and curvature coefficients are acceptable error terms, i.e. they verify important structural properties, reminiscent to the null condition.

Remark 2.3.2. Due to the presence of the linear terms in A , resp. \underline{A} , on the right hand side of (2.3.4), one has to view the wave equations in (2.3.4) as coupled with the defining equations for $\mathbf{q}, \underline{\mathbf{q}}$ given by (2.3.2), that is coupled¹² with second order transport type equations in A , resp. \underline{A} .

Remark 2.3.3. Note that, in the case of Kerr, the corresponding gRW type equations in $[Ma]$ are complex scalars $\psi^{[\pm]}$ verifying the equations¹³

$$\square_{a,m} \psi^{[\pm]} + ia c(r, \theta) \partial_t \psi^{[\pm]} + V(r, \theta) \psi^{[\pm]} = a L_{\pm}(\alpha^{[\pm 2]}). \quad (2.3.5)$$

These scalars are connected to our tensorial quantities $\mathbf{q}, \underline{\mathbf{q}}$ via the relations $\psi^{[+]} = \mathbf{q}(e_1, e_1)$, $\psi^{[-]} = \underline{\mathbf{q}}(e_1, e_1)$. The equations (2.3.5) can be obtained by projecting our tensorial equations (2.3.4). Note however that the projection modifies the equations by the appearance of Christoffel symbols¹⁴ of the horizontal frame¹⁵.

¹¹Here $\dot{\square}_2$ is the covariant wave operator for horizontal 2-tensors, see section 2.3. in the paper.

¹²This is different from the case of Schwarzschild, see [K-S:Schw], where these equations decouple.

¹³ With $\square_{a,m}$ the Kerr D'Alembertian, c, V are real function of r, θ and $L_{\pm}(\alpha^{[\pm 2]})$ lower order terms.

¹⁴Singular on the axis, i.e. at $\theta = 0, \pi$.

¹⁵See Section 5.2.2 of the paper for a discussion of the projection and the relation with equation (2.3.5).

2.3.2 RW model equations

The most demanding part in the analysis of the gRW equations (2.3.4) is to derive global Energy-Morawetz type estimates for (\mathbf{q}, A) and respectively $(\underline{\mathbf{q}}, \underline{A})$. To do this, it helps to analyze first the reduced equations in which the right hand side of both equations are treated as sources. Taking also $\psi = \Re(\mathbf{q})$, $\underline{\psi} = \Re(\underline{\mathbf{q}})$ we are led to the real RW model equations

$$\begin{aligned} \square_2 \psi - V\psi &= -\frac{4a \cos \theta}{|q|^2} {}^* \nabla_T \psi + N, & V &= \frac{4\Delta}{(r^2 + a^2)|q|^2}, \\ \square_2 \underline{\psi} - V\underline{\psi} &= \frac{4a \cos \theta}{|q|^2} {}^* \nabla_T \underline{\psi} + \underline{N}, & V &= \frac{4\Delta}{(r^2 + a^2)|q|^2}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.3.6)$$

A significant part in the proof of Theorems 2.2.2-2.2.3 is to derive the following result for $\psi, \underline{\psi}$.

Theorem 2.3.4. *The following estimates hold true for solutions $\psi, \underline{\psi} \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ of the wave equations (2.3.6) on spacetime region $\mathcal{M}(\tau_1, \tau_2)$, for all $\delta \leq p \leq 2 - \delta$ and $2 \leq s \leq k_L$,*

$$BEF_p^s[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) \lesssim E_p^s[\psi](\tau_1) + \mathcal{N}_p^s[\psi, N](\tau_1, \tau_2), \quad (2.3.7)$$

$$BEF_p^s[\underline{\psi}](\tau_1, \tau_2) \lesssim E_p^s[\underline{\psi}](\tau_1) + \mathcal{N}_p^s[\underline{\psi}, \underline{N}](\tau_1, \tau_2), \quad (2.3.8)$$

where

$$BEF_p^s[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) := \sup_{\tau \in [\tau_1, \tau_2]} E_p^s[\psi](\tau) + B_p^s[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) + F_p^s[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2). \quad (2.3.9)$$

The energy flux norms $E_p^s[\psi], F_p^s[\psi]$, bulk norms $B_p^s[\psi]$ and source norms \mathcal{N}_p^s , with p referring to r^p weights and s to the number of derivatives, are defined in section ?? of these notes. For the sake of this introduction it suffices to take a closer look at the crucial bulk terms B_p^s , which degenerate at the trapped set \mathcal{M}_{trap} , see Definition 2.1.2.

Definition 2.3.5. *For $0 < p < 2$ we define, with $\mathfrak{d} = (r\nabla_4, r\nabla, \nabla_3)$, the bulk norms $B_p^s[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) := \sum_{k \leq s} B_p[\mathfrak{d}^k \psi]$*

$$\begin{aligned} B_p[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) &:= Mor[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) + \int_{\mathcal{M}_{r \geq 4m}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{-1-\delta} |\nabla_3 \psi| + r^{p-3} \left(|\mathfrak{d}\psi|^2 + |\psi|^2 \right), \\ Mor[\psi](\tau_1, \tau_2) &:= \int_{\mathcal{M}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{-2} |\nabla_{\widehat{R}} \psi|^2 + r^{-3} |\psi|^2 + \int_{\mathcal{M}_{trg_p}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \left(r^{-2} |\nabla_3 \psi|^2 + r^{-1} |\nabla \psi|^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

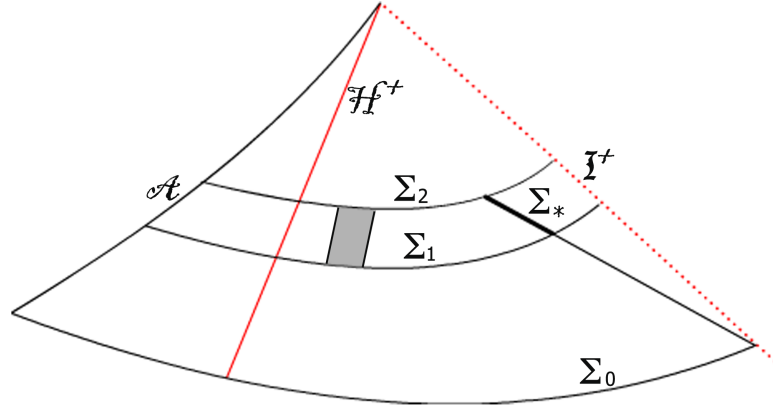


Figure 2.1: The spacetime region $\mathcal{M}(\tau_1, \tau_2) = \mathcal{M} \cap \{\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2\}$ between the spacelike hypersurfaces $\Sigma_1 = \Sigma(\tau_1)$ and $\Sigma_2 = \Sigma(\tau_2)$, with the grey region denoting the trapped set.

The important thing in this definition is that $B_p[\psi]$ controls the spacetime integrals of $|\nabla_{\hat{R}}\psi|^2$ and $|\psi|^2$ everywhere and all other derivatives away from the trapped set.

In addition, we also derive estimates for the quantity $\check{\psi} := r^2(e_4\psi + \frac{r}{|q|^2}\psi)$ for which one can prove stronger r^p estimates¹⁶, see Theorem ??.

The content of the section below are to be found in the Introduction to [GKS-2022]

2.4 Main steps in the proof of Theorems M1 and M2

2.5 Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 2.3.4

2.6 Main ideas in the proof of Theorem 2.2.4

¹⁶These results are the analog in perturbations of Kerr, to Theorem 5.17 and Theorem 5.18 of [K-S:Schw] for perturbations of Schwarzschild. They are based on improved r^p weighted hierarchy first introduced in [AArGa].

Part II

Formalism and derivation of the main equations

Chapter 3

The geometric formalism of null horizontal structures

We summarize the content of Chapters 2 in [GKS-2022] which provides the general formalism used in our stability of Kerr papers. The formalism extends the one used for perturbations of Minkowski space [Ch-Kl] to perturbations of Kerr spacetimes. Such formalism can be adapted to any Lorentzian spacetime possessing a null pair and not necessarily foliated by surfaces. The formalism in this section is very general and does not rely on the Einstein equation.

3.0.1 Null pairs and horizontal structures

Let $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$ be a Lorentzian spacetime. Consider an arbitrary null pair $e_3 = \underline{L}$, $e_4 = L$, i.e.

$$\mathbf{g}(e_3, e_3) = \mathbf{g}(e_4, e_4) = 0, \quad \mathbf{g}(e_3, e_4) = -2.$$

Definition 3.0.1. *We say that a vectorfield X is (L, \underline{L}) -horizontal, or simply horizontal, if*

$$\mathbf{g}(L, X) = \mathbf{g}(\underline{L}, X) = 0.$$

We denote by $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ the set of horizontal vectorfields on \mathcal{M} . Given a fixed orientation on \mathcal{M} , with corresponding volume form ϵ , we define the induced volume form on $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ by,

$$\epsilon(X, Y) := \frac{1}{2} \epsilon(X, Y, \underline{L}, L). \quad (3.0.1)$$

Given a null pair (L, \underline{L}) , the horizontal vectorfields $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ define a horizontal distribution, i.e. a sub-bundle of the tangent bundle $\mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ of the manifold. In the standard terminology used in differential topology, a subbundle $E \subset \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ of the tangent bundle is said to be integrable if for any vectorfields X and Y taking values in E , the Lie bracket $[X, Y]$ takes values in E as well. We recall that Frobenius' theorem states that a subbundle E is integrable (or involutive) if and only if the subbundle E arises from a regular foliation of \mathcal{M} , i.e. if locally the subbundle E can be realized as the tangent space of a submanifold of \mathcal{M} .

In the context of Lorentzian spacetimes, we are often interested in foliations of the manifold given by compact surfaces S , called S -foliations in [Ch-Kl]. We therefore formulate the following definition.

Definition 3.0.2. *We say that the horizontal structure $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ is integrable if there exists a foliation by compact surfaces S , i.e. an S -foliation of \mathcal{M} , such that the horizontal vectors in $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ at every point coincide with the tangent space of S , i.e. $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M}) = \mathbf{T}(S)$.*

Here we will work with general, not necessarily integrable, horizontal structures.

Clearly, any linear combination of horizontal vectorfields is again horizontal. However, the commutator $[X, Y]$ of two horizontal vectorfields may fail to be horizontal. Such failure is precisely related to the existence¹ of an S -foliation. More precisely, if $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ is integrable according to Definition 3.0.2, i.e. admits an S -foliation, then $X, Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ implies that $[X, Y] \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$. Conversely, if $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ is not close under the Lie bracket, then it can not be foliated by compact surfaces.

Given an arbitrary vectorfield X we denote by ${}^{(h)}X$ its horizontal projection,

$${}^{(h)}X = X + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, \underline{L})L + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, L)\underline{L}.$$

Definition 3.0.3. *A k -covariant tensor-field U is said to be horizontal, and denoted $U \in \mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$, if for any vectorfields X_1, \dots, X_k we have,*

$$U(X_1, \dots, X_k) = U({}^{(h)}X_1, \dots, {}^{(h)}X_k).$$

We can define the projection operator,

$$\Pi^{\mu\nu} = \mathbf{g}^{\mu\nu} + \frac{1}{2}(\underline{L}^\mu L^\nu + L^\mu \underline{L}^\nu).$$

Clearly $\Pi^\mu_\alpha \Pi^\beta_\mu = \Pi^\beta_\alpha$. An arbitrary tensor $U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_m}$ is horizontal, if

$$\Pi^{\beta_1}_{\alpha_1} \dots \Pi^{\beta_m}_{\alpha_m} U_{\beta_1 \dots \beta_m} = U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_m}.$$

¹Consistent to Frobenius' theorem.

Definition 3.0.4. For any horizontal X, Y we define²

$$\gamma(X, Y) = \mathbf{g}(X, Y) \quad (3.0.2)$$

and

$$\begin{cases} \chi(X, Y) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X L, Y), \\ \underline{\chi}(X, Y) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X \underline{L}, Y). \end{cases} \quad (3.0.3)$$

where \mathbf{D} denotes the covariant derivative of \mathbf{g} .

Observe that χ and $\underline{\chi}$ are symmetric if and only if the horizontal structure is integrable. Indeed this follows easily from the formulas,

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(X, Y) - \chi(Y, X) &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X L, Y) - \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_Y L, X) = -\mathbf{g}(L, [X, Y]), \\ \underline{\chi}(X, Y) - \underline{\chi}(Y, X) &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X \underline{L}, Y) - \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_Y \underline{L}, X) = -\mathbf{g}(\underline{L}, [X, Y]). \end{aligned}$$

We can view γ , χ and $\underline{\chi}$ as horizontal 2-covariant tensor-fields by extending their definition to arbitrary vectorfields X, Y according to,

$$\gamma(X, Y) = \gamma({}^{(h)}X, {}^{(h)}Y)$$

and

$$\chi(X, Y) = \chi({}^{(h)}X, {}^{(h)}Y), \quad \underline{\chi}(X, Y) = \underline{\chi}({}^{(h)}X, {}^{(h)}Y).$$

Given a general 2-covariant horizontal tensor U we decompose it in its symmetric and antisymmetric part as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(s)}U(X, Y) &= \frac{1}{2}(U(X, Y) + U(Y, X)), \\ {}^{(a)}U(X, Y) &= \frac{1}{2}(U(X, Y) - U(Y, X)). \end{aligned}$$

Given a horizontal structure defined by $e_3 = \underline{L}$, $e_4 = L$ we associate a null frame by choosing orthonormal horizontal vectorfields e_1, e_2 such that $\gamma(e_a, e_b) = \delta_{ab}$. By convention, we say that (e_1, e_2) is positively oriented on $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ if,

$$\in(e_1, e_2) = \in(e_1, e_2, e_3, e_4) = 1. \quad (3.0.4)$$

Remark 3.0.5. We note that the particular choice of an orthonormal basis for \mathcal{H} is immaterial. All the quantities we work with are tensorial with respect to the horizontal structure.

²In the particular case where the horizontal structure is integrable, γ is the induced metric, and χ and $\underline{\chi}$ are the null second fundamental forms.

Given a covariant horizontal 2-tensor U and an arbitrary orthonormal horizontal frame $(e_a)_{a=1,2}$ we have,

$${}^{(s)}U_{ab} = \frac{1}{2}(U_{ab} + U_{ba}), \quad {}^{(a)}U_{ab} = \frac{1}{2}(U_{ab} - U_{ba}).$$

Definition 3.0.6. *The trace of a horizontal 2-tensor U is defined by*

$$\text{tr}(U) := \delta^{ab} U_{ab} = \delta^{ab} {}^{(s)}U_{ab}. \quad (3.0.5)$$

We define the anti-trace of U by,

$${}^{(a)}\text{tr}(U) := \epsilon^{ab} U_{ab} = \epsilon^{ab} {}^{(a)}U_{ab}. \quad (3.0.6)$$

Observe that the first trace is independent of the particular choice of the frame e_1, e_2 . On the other hand, for fixed e_3, e_4 , ${}^{(a)}\text{tr}$ depends on the orientation of e_1, e_2 . Also, by interchanging e_3, e_4 , ${}^{(a)}\text{tr}$ changes sign.

A general horizontal 2-tensor U can be decomposed according to,

$$U_{ab} = {}^{(s)}U_{ab} + {}^{(a)}U_{ab} = \widehat{U}_{ab} + \frac{1}{2}\delta_{ab}\text{tr}(U) + \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_{ab}{}^{(a)}\text{tr}(U). \quad (3.0.7)$$

where \widehat{U} denotes the symmetric traceless part of U .

Definition 3.0.7. *We introduce the notation*

$$\text{tr } \chi := \text{tr}(\chi), \quad {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi := {}^{(a)}\text{tr}(\chi), \quad \text{tr } \underline{\chi} := \text{tr}(\underline{\chi}), \quad {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} := {}^{(a)}\text{tr}(\underline{\chi}). \quad (3.0.8)$$

The quantities $\widehat{\chi}$, $\text{tr } \chi$ and $\widehat{\underline{\chi}}$, $\text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ are called, respectively, the shear and expansion of the horizontal distribution $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$. The scalars ${}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi$ and ${}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}$ measure the integrability defects of the distribution.

Accordingly, we decompose $\chi, \underline{\chi}$ as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_{ab} &= \widehat{\chi}_{ab} + \frac{1}{2}\delta_{ab}\text{tr } \chi + \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_{ab}{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi, \\ \underline{\chi}_{ab} &= \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{ab} + \frac{1}{2}\delta_{ab}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_{ab}{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}. \end{aligned}$$

The scalars $\text{tr } \chi, \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ are called expansions and $\chi, \underline{\chi}$ are called the shears of the horizontal structure.

In what follows we fix a null pair e_3, e_4 and an orientation on $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$. Consider the set of all smooth k -horizontal tensorfields $\xi = \xi_{a_1 \dots a_k}$ which are fully symmetric and traceless, i.e.

$$\xi = \xi_{(a_1 \dots a_k)}, \quad \gamma^{a_i a_j} \xi_{a_1 \dots a_i \dots a_j \dots a_k} = 0.$$

Definition 3.0.8. We denote³ by $\mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$ the set of all horizontal tensor-fields of rank k on \mathcal{M} . We denote by $\mathfrak{s}_0 = \mathfrak{s}_0(\mathcal{M})$ the set of pairs of scalar functions on \mathcal{M} , $\mathfrak{s}_1 = \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathcal{M})$ the set of horizontal 1-forms on \mathcal{M} and for, $k \geq 2$, $\mathfrak{s}_k(\mathcal{M})$ the set of fully symmetric traceless horizontal tensors of rank k . In particular $\mathfrak{s}_2 = \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathcal{M})$ denotes the set of symmetric traceless horizontal 2-tensors on \mathcal{M} .

In particular, $\text{tr } \chi, \text{tr } \underline{\chi}, {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi, {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \in \mathfrak{s}_0$ and $\widehat{\chi}, \widehat{\underline{\chi}} \in \mathfrak{s}_2$. Any horizontal 1-form belongs to \mathfrak{s}_1 .

Definition 3.0.9. We define the left and right duals of a horizontal of tensors $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$, $k = 1, 2$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^*\xi_a &= \epsilon_{ab} \xi_b, & \xi^*{}_a &= \xi_b \epsilon_{ba}, \\ ({}^*\xi)_{ab} &= \epsilon_{ac} \xi_{cb}, & (\xi^*)_{ab} &= \xi_{ac} \epsilon_{cb}. \end{aligned}$$

Lemma 3.0.10. Given $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_{1,2}$, we have

$${}^*({}^*\xi) = -\xi, \quad {}^*\xi = -\xi^*.$$

Proof. Straightforward verification. □

Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_{1,2}$ we define all the possible dot products between then

$$\xi \cdot \eta = \begin{cases} \xi^a \eta_a & \text{if } \xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1 \\ \xi^a \eta_{ab}, & \text{if } \xi \in \mathfrak{s}_1, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2 \\ \xi_{ab} \eta^b, & \text{if } \xi \in \mathfrak{s}_2, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1 \\ \xi_{ab} \eta^{ab}, & \text{if } \xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2. \\ \xi_{ac} \eta^c{}_b, & \text{if } \xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2. \end{cases}$$

Lemma 3.0.11. Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_{1,2}$ we have,

$${}^*\xi \cdot \eta = -\xi \cdot {}^*\eta$$

Proof. Straightforward verification. □

Lemma 3.0.12. Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ we have, with respect to an arbitrary orthonormal basis,

$$\xi_{ac} \eta_{cb} + \eta_{ac} \xi_{cb} = \delta_{ab} \xi \cdot \eta$$

³Using the convention of raising and lowering indices we make no distinction here between covariant and contravariant tensors.

Proof. Straightforward verification using an orthonormal basis e_1, e_2 . \square

Definition 3.0.13. Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ we denote

$$\begin{aligned}\xi \cdot \eta &:= \delta^{ab} \xi_a \eta_b, \\ \xi \wedge \eta &:= \epsilon^{ab} \xi_a \eta_b, \\ (\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{ab} &:= \xi_a \eta_b + \xi_b \eta_a - \delta_{ab} \xi \cdot \eta.\end{aligned}$$

Given $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_1, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ we denote

$$(\xi \cdot \eta)_a := \delta^{bc} \xi_b \eta_{ac}.$$

Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ we denote

$$(\xi \wedge \eta)_{ab} := \epsilon^{ab} \xi_{ac} \eta_{cb}.$$

Lemma 3.0.14. Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1$,

$${}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta = \xi \widehat{\otimes} {}^* \eta, \quad {}^*(\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta) = {}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta, \quad {}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} {}^* \eta = -\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta.$$

Proof. Write

$$\begin{aligned}{}^*(\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{11} &= (\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{21} = \xi_2 \eta_1 + \xi_1 \eta_2, \\ (\xi \widehat{\otimes} {}^* \eta)_{11} &= \xi_1 ({}^* \eta)_1 - \xi_2 ({}^* \eta)_2 = \xi_1 \eta_2 + \xi_2 \eta_1, \\ ({}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{11} &= ({}^* \xi)_1 \eta_1 - ({}^* \xi)_2 \eta_2 = \xi_2 \eta_1 + \xi_1 \eta_2. \\ {}^*(\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{12} &= \xi_2 \eta_2 - \xi_1 \eta_1, \\ (\xi \widehat{\otimes} {}^* \eta)_{12} &= \xi_1 {}^* \eta_2 + \xi_2 {}^* \eta_1 = -\xi_1 \eta_1 + \xi_2 \eta_2, \\ ({}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta)_{12} &= {}^* \xi_1 \eta_2 + {}^* \xi_2 \eta_1 = -\xi_1 \eta_1 + \xi_2 \eta_2.\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$${}^*(\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta) = {}^* \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta = \xi \widehat{\otimes} {}^* \eta.$$

\square

Lemma 3.0.15. Given $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1, u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ we have

$$\xi \widehat{\otimes} (\eta \cdot u) + \eta \widehat{\otimes} (\xi \cdot u) = 2(\xi \cdot \eta)u.$$

Proof. Straightforward verification using direct verification as above. \square

3.0.2 Horizontal covariant derivative

Given $X, Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ the covariant derivative $\mathbf{D}_X Y$ fails in general to be horizontal. We thus define the horizontal covariant operator ∇ as follows,

$$\nabla_X Y := {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_X Y) = \mathbf{D}_X Y - \frac{1}{2}\underline{\chi}(X, Y)L - \frac{1}{2}\chi(X, Y)\underline{L}. \quad (3.0.9)$$

Proposition 3.0.16. *For all $X, Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$,*

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_X Y - \nabla_Y X &= [X, Y] - {}^{(a)}\underline{\chi}(X, Y)L - {}^{(a)}\chi(X, Y)\underline{L} \\ &= [X, Y] - \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi}L + {}^{(a)}tr\chi\underline{L}) \in (X, Y). \end{aligned}$$

In particular,

$${}^{(h)}[X, Y] = \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi}L + {}^{(a)}tr\chi\underline{L}) \in (X, Y). \quad (3.0.10)$$

For all $X, Y, Z \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$,

$$Z\gamma(X, Y) = \gamma(\nabla_Z X, Y) + \gamma(X, \nabla_Z Y).$$

Remark 3.0.17. *In the integrable case, ∇ coincides with the Levi-Civita connection of the metric induced on the integral surfaces of $\mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$.*

Given a general covariant, horizontal tensor-field U we define its horizontal covariant derivative according to the formula,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_Z U(X_1, \dots, X_k) &= Z(U(X_1, \dots, X_k)) - U(\nabla_Z X_1, \dots, X_k) - \\ &\dots - U(X_1, \dots, \nabla_Z X_k). \end{aligned}$$

Given X horizontal, $\mathbf{D}_L X$ and $\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} X$ are in general not horizontal. We define $\nabla_L X$ and $\nabla_{\underline{L}} X$ to be the horizontal projections of the former. More precisely,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_L X &:= {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_L X) = \mathbf{D}_L X - \mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_L \underline{L})L - \mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_L L)\underline{L}, \\ \nabla_{\underline{L}} X &:= {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} X) = \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} X - \mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L})L - \mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} L)\underline{L}. \end{aligned}$$

We can extend the operators ∇_L and $\nabla_{\underline{L}}$ to arbitrary k -covariant, horizontal tensor-fields U as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_L U(X_1, \dots, X_k) &= L(U(X_1, \dots, X_k)) - U(\nabla_L X_1, \dots, X_k) - \\ &\dots - U(X_1, \dots, \nabla_L X_k), \\ \nabla_{\underline{L}} U(X_1, \dots, X_k) &= \underline{L}(U(X_1, \dots, X_k)) - U(\nabla_{\underline{L}} X_1, \dots, X_k) - \\ &\dots - U(X_1, \dots, \nabla_{\underline{L}} X_k). \end{aligned}$$

The following proposition follows easily from the definition.

Proposition 3.0.18. *The operators ∇ , ∇_L and $\nabla_{\underline{L}}$ take horizontal tensor-fields into horizontal tensor-fields. We have,*

$$\nabla\gamma = \nabla_L\gamma = \nabla_{\underline{L}}\gamma = 0. \quad (3.0.11)$$

We now extend the definition of horizontal covariant derivative to any $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ in the tangent space of \mathcal{M} and $Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$.

Definition 3.0.19. *Given $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ and $Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ we define,*

$$\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y := {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_X Y).$$

Given an orthonormal frame $e_1, e_2 \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$ we write

$$\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu e_a = \sum_{b=1,2} (\Lambda_\mu)_{ba} e_b, \quad (\Lambda_\mu)_{\alpha\beta} := \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_\mu e_\beta, e_\alpha).$$

Definition 3.0.20. *Given a general, covariant, S -horizontal tensor-field U we define its horizontal covariant derivative according to the formula,*

$$\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X U(Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = X(U(Y_1, \dots, Y_k)) - U(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_1, \dots, Y_k) - \dots - U(Y_1, \dots, \dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_k),$$

where $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ and $Y_1, \dots, Y_k \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$.

Proposition 3.0.21. *For all $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ and $Y_1, Y_2 \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M})$,*

$$Xh(Y_1, Y_2) = h(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_1, Y_2) + h(Y_1, \dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_2).$$

Proof. Indeed,

$$\begin{aligned} Xh(Y_1, Y_2) &= X\mathbf{g}(Y_1, Y_2) = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X Y_1, Y_2) + \mathbf{g}(Y_1, \mathbf{D}_X Y_2) = \mathbf{g}(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_1, Y_2) + \mathbf{g}(Y_1, \dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_2) \\ &= h(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_1, Y_2) + h(Y_1, \dot{\mathbf{D}}_X Y_2) \end{aligned}$$

as desired. □

We consider tensors $\mathbf{T}_k(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$, i.e. tensors of the form $U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, a_1 \dots a_l}$ for which we define,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, a_1 \dots a_l} &= e_\mu U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, a_1 \dots a_l} - U_{\mathbf{D}_\mu \nu_1 \dots \nu_k, a_1 \dots a_l} - \dots - U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, \mathbf{D}_\mu a_1 \dots a_l} \\ &= U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu a_1 \dots a_l} - U_{\nu_1 \dots \nu_k, a_1 \dots \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu a_l}. \end{aligned}$$

We are now ready to prove the following.

Proposition 3.0.22. *For a tensor $\Psi \in \mathbf{O}_1(\mathcal{M})$, we have the curvature formula⁴*

$$(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu - \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu) \Psi_a = \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\mu\nu} \Psi^b \quad (3.0.12)$$

where, with connection coefficients $(\Lambda_\alpha)_{\beta\gamma} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_\alpha e_\gamma, e_\beta)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\mu\nu} &:= \mathbf{R}_{ab\mu\nu} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B}_{ab\mu\nu} \\ \mathbf{B}_{ab\mu\nu} &:= (\Lambda_\mu)_{3a} (\Lambda_\nu)_{b4} + (\Lambda_\mu)_{4a} (\Lambda_\nu)_{b3} - (\Lambda_\nu)_{3a} (\Lambda_\mu)_{b4} - (\Lambda_\nu)_{4a} (\Lambda_\mu)_{b3}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.0.13)$$

More generally, for a mixed tensor $\Psi \in \mathbf{T}_1(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_1(\mathcal{M})$, we have

$$(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu - \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu) \Psi_{\lambda a} = \mathbf{R}_\lambda{}^\sigma{}_{\mu\nu} \Psi_{\sigma a} + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_a{}^b{}_{\mu\nu} \Psi_{\lambda b}$$

with an immediate generalization to tensors $\Psi \in \mathbf{T}_k(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$.

Proof. See proof of Proposition 2.1.27 in [GKS-2022]. □

Remark 3.0.23. *Note that the tensor $\mathbf{B}_{ab\mu\nu}$ is anti-symmetric in both $\mu\nu$ and ab .*

Corollary 3.0.24. *Let X, Y be arbitrary vectorfields on \mathcal{M} and $U \in \mathbf{O}_1(\mathcal{M})$ an horizontal tensor. We have⁵*

$$(\nabla_X \nabla_Y - \nabla_Y \nabla_X) U = \nabla_{[X, Y]} U + \dot{\mathbf{R}}(X, Y) U$$

with an immediate generalization to $U \in \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$.

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_Y \nabla_X U_a &= (Y^\lambda \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda)(X^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu) U_a = Y^\lambda X^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_a + (Y^\lambda \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda)(X^\mu) \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_a, \\ \nabla_X \nabla_Y U_a &= X^\mu Y^\lambda \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda U_a + (X^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu)(Y^\lambda) \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda U_a. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla_X \nabla_Y - \nabla_Y \nabla_X) U_a &= Y^\lambda X^\mu (\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu - \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda) U_a + (\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X(Y^\mu) - \dot{\mathbf{D}}_Y(X^\mu)) \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_a \\ &= X^\mu Y^\nu \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\mu\nu} U^b + \dot{\mathbf{D}}_{[X, Y]} U_a, \end{aligned}$$

as stated. □

⁴ With an immediate generalization to tensors $\Psi \in \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$.

⁵ Here $(\dot{\mathbf{R}}(X, Y)U)_a := X^\mu Y^\nu \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\mu\nu} U^b$.

3.0.3 The Gauss equation

Note that in the case of a non-integrable structure, we are missing the traditional Gauss equation which connects the Gauss curvature of a sphere to a Riemann curvature component. In what follows we state a result which is its non-integrable analogue.

Proposition 3.0.25. *The following identity holds true.*

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_a \nabla_b X_c - \nabla_b \nabla_a X_c &= \mathbf{R}_{cdab} X^d + \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} \left({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) X_c \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \left(\chi_{ac} \underline{\chi}_{bd} + \underline{\chi}_{ac} \chi_{bd} - \chi_{bc} \underline{\chi}_{ad} - \underline{\chi}_{bc} \chi_{ad} \right) X^d, \end{aligned} \quad (3.0.14)$$

where \mathbf{R}_{cdab} denotes the Riemann curvature of $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$.

Proof. See the proof of Proposition 2.1.41 in [GKS-2022]. \square

Remark 3.0.26. *We note that (3.0.14) can be derived from Corollary 3.0.24 according to which, relative to an arbitrary frame e_μ ,*

$$(\nabla_\mu \nabla_\nu - \nabla_\nu \nabla_\mu) X = \nabla_{[e_\mu, e_\nu]} X + \dot{\mathbf{R}}(e_\mu, e_\nu) X$$

with $\dot{\mathbf{R}} = \mathbf{R} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B}$ and \mathbf{B} defined in (3.0.13). The Gauss formula follows then easily by evaluating the components \mathbf{B}_{cdab} of the tensor \mathbf{B} and the term $\nabla_{[e_a, e_b]} X$.

We now specialize the Gauss equation (3.0.14) to tensors.

Proposition 3.0.27. *The following identities hold true.*

1. *For a scalar ψ :*

$$[\nabla_a, \nabla_b] \psi = \left(\frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \psi \right) \epsilon_{ab}. \quad (3.0.15)$$

2. *The only non-vanishing component of \mathbf{B}_{abcd} is given by*

$$\mathbf{B}_{1212} = -\mathbf{B}_{1221} = \mathbf{B}_{2121} = -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}}. \quad (3.0.16)$$

3. *For $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ for $k = 1, 2$,*

$$[\nabla_a, \nabla_b] \psi = \left(\frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \psi + k {}^{(h)}K {}^* \psi \right) \epsilon_{ab} \quad (3.0.17)$$

where

$${}^{(h)}K := -\frac{1}{4} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{4} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{R}_{3434}. \quad (3.0.18)$$

Proof. The case of scalars can be easily checked directly.

We consider below the case $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2$. From Corollary 3.0.24 applied to $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla_a \nabla_b - \nabla_b \nabla_a) \psi_{st} &= \frac{1}{2} \epsilon_{ab} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \psi_{st} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B}_{sdab} \psi_{dt} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{B}_{tdab} \psi_{sd} \\ &\quad + \mathbf{R}_{sdab} \psi_{dt} + \mathbf{R}_{tdab} \psi_{sd} \end{aligned}$$

where, by definition of \mathbf{B} given in (3.0.13),

$$\mathbf{B}_{cdab} : = \chi_{bc} \underline{\chi}_{ad} + \underline{\chi}_{bc} \chi_{ad} - \chi_{ac} \underline{\chi}_{bd} - \underline{\chi}_{ac} \chi_{bd}. \quad (3.0.19)$$

Note that by the symmetries of \mathbf{B} , all components of \mathbf{B}_{abcd} vanish except for \mathbf{B}_{1212} . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_{1212} &= -\chi_{11} \underline{\chi}_{22} - \underline{\chi}_{11} \chi_{22} + \chi_{21} \underline{\chi}_{12} + \underline{\chi}_{21} \chi_{12} \\ &= -\left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi + \widehat{\chi}_{11}\right) \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{22}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{11}\right) \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi + \widehat{\chi}_{22}\right) \\ &\quad + \left(-\frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + \widehat{\chi}_{21}\right) \left(\frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{12}\right) + \left(-\frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{21}\right) \left(\frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + \widehat{\chi}_{12}\right) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \widehat{\chi}_{11} \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{22} - \widehat{\chi}_{22} \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{11} + \widehat{\chi}_{21} \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{12} + \widehat{\chi}_{12} \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{21} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}}. \end{aligned}$$

This implies for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2$:

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_1, \nabla_2] \psi &= \frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \psi \\ &\quad - \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}_{3434} \right) * \psi \end{aligned}$$

as stated. The case $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ can be treated in the same manner. \square

Remark 3.0.28. The quantity ${}^{(h)}K$ defined by (3.0.18) becomes the standard Gauss curvature in the case of an integrable structure. We note also that the value of ${}^{(h)}K$ for the standard non-integrable structure (induced by the standard principal null directions, see Chapter ??) of Kerr is given by the formula

$${}^{(h)}K = \frac{r^4 + a^2 r^2 \sin^2 \theta - 4ma^2 r \cos^2 \theta - a^4 \cos^2 \theta}{|q|^6}.$$

Here is a more general version of Proposition 3.0.27.

Proposition 3.0.29. *The following identity holds true for any horizontal tensor $\psi \in \mathbf{O}_k$ and set of horizontal indices $I = i_1 \dots i_k$*

$$[\nabla_a, \nabla_b]\psi_I = \left(\frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \psi_I \right) \epsilon_{ab} + {}^{(h)}K \left[(g_{i_1 a} g_{tb} - g_{i_1 b} g_{ta}) \psi^t_{i_2 \dots i_k} + \dots (g_{i_k a} g_{tb} - g_{i_k b} g_{ta}) \psi_{i_1 \dots}^t \right] \quad (3.0.20)$$

with ${}^{(h)}K$ given by (3.0.18).

Proof. The proof is a simple extension of the proof of Proposition 3.0.27, and is left to the reader. \square

Remark 3.0.30. *Observe that in the case when the horizontal structure is tangent to a S -foliation, ${}^{(h)}K$ reduces to the Gauss curvature of S . In the integrable case we can calculate directly⁶ on any surface of integrability S with Gauss curvature K ,*

$$[\nabla_a, \nabla_b]\psi_s = K(g_{sa}g_{tb} - g_{sb}g_{ta})\psi^t = K(g_{sa}\psi_b - g_{sb}\psi_a) = K \epsilon_{ab} {}^*\psi_s$$

which coincides with formula (3.0.17) in this case. Also for $\psi \in \mathbf{O}_2$ (but not necessarily in \mathfrak{s}_2),

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b]\psi_{s_1 s_2} &= K(g_{s_1 a} g_{tb} - g_{s_1 b} g_{ta})\psi^t_{s_2} + K(g_{s_2 a} g_{tb} - g_{s_2 b} g_{ta})\psi_{s_1}^t \\ &= K(g_{s_1 a} \psi_{b s_2} - g_{s_1 b} \psi_{a s_2}) + K(g_{s_2 a} \psi_{s_1 b} - g_{s_2 b} \psi_{s_1 a}). \end{aligned}$$

3.0.4 Horizontal Hodge operators

In this section we recall the Hodge operators on 2-spheres as defined in [Ch-Kl] and extend their properties to the case of non-integrable horizontal structure.

We first define the following operators on horizontal tensors.

Definition 3.0.31. *For a given horizontal 1-form ξ , we define the frame dependent operators,*

$$\text{div } \xi = \delta^{ab} \nabla_b \xi_a, \quad \text{curl } \xi = \epsilon^{ab} \nabla_a \xi_b, \quad (\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi)_{ba} = \nabla_b \xi_a + \nabla_a \xi_b - \delta_{ab} (\text{div } \xi).$$

We collect below some Leibniz rules regarding the horizontal Hodge operators.

⁶One can check directly that $g_{sa}\psi_b - g_{sb}\psi_a = \epsilon_{ab} {}^*\psi_s$.

Lemma 3.0.32. *We have for $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1$, $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$,*

$$\begin{aligned} (\operatorname{div} \eta) \xi - (\operatorname{curl} \eta) \cdot \xi &= \xi \cdot \nabla \eta + \xi \cdot \cdot \nabla \cdot \eta \\ \xi \widehat{\otimes} (\operatorname{div} u) &= \xi \cdot \nabla u + \xi \cdot \cdot \nabla \cdot u \\ \xi \cdot (\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \eta) &= \xi \cdot \nabla f - \xi \cdot \cdot \nabla \cdot \eta. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. See the proof of Lemma 2.1.31 in [GKS-2022]. \square

Definition 3.0.33. *Given an orthonormal basis of horizontal vectors e_1, e_2 we define the Hodge type operators (recall Definition 3.0.8), as introduced in [Ch-Kl].*

- \mathcal{P}_1 takes \mathfrak{s}_1 into⁷ \mathfrak{s}_0 :

$$\mathcal{P}_1 \xi = (\operatorname{div} \xi, \operatorname{curl} \xi),$$

- \mathcal{P}_2 takes \mathfrak{s}_2 into \mathfrak{s}_1 :

$$(\mathcal{P}_2 \xi)_a = \nabla^b \xi_{ab},$$

- \mathcal{P}_1^* takes \mathfrak{s}_0 into \mathfrak{s}_1 :

$$\mathcal{P}_1^*(f, f_*) = -\nabla_a f + \epsilon_{ab} \nabla_b f_*,$$

- \mathcal{P}_2^* takes \mathfrak{s}_1 into \mathfrak{s}_2 :

$$\mathcal{P}_2^* \xi = -\frac{1}{2} \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi.$$

Lemma 3.0.34. *Note the following pointwise identities:*

1. *Given $(f, f_*) \in \mathfrak{s}_0$, $u \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ we have*

$$\mathcal{P}_1^*(f, f_*) \cdot u = (f, f_*) \cdot \mathcal{P}_1 u - \nabla_a (f u^a + f_* (\cdot u)^a). \quad (3.0.21)$$

2. *Given $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$, $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ we have,*

$$(\mathcal{P}_2^* f) \cdot u = f \cdot (\mathcal{P}_2 u) - \nabla_a (f u^{ab}). \quad (3.0.22)$$

Proof. To check (3.0.22) we write

$$(\nabla \widehat{\otimes} f) \cdot u = (\nabla_a f_b + \nabla_b f_a - \delta_{ab} \operatorname{div} f) u_{ab} = 2(\nabla_a f_b) u_{ab} = 2\nabla_a (u_{ab} f_b) - 2(\operatorname{div} u) \cdot f.$$

\square

In the particular case when the horizontal structure is tangent to 2-spheres S these operators are elliptic on S and have the remarkable properties discussed in Chapter 2 of [Ch-Kl] which we recall in the next section.

⁷Recall that \mathfrak{s}_0 refers to pairs of scalar functions.

Hodge operators on spheres

The following results were derived in Chapter 2 of [Ch-Kl] in the context of general 2-dimensional compact surfaces S with strictly positive Gauss curvature K which we will refer from now on as a 2-sphere.

Lemma 3.0.35. *Given a 2-sphere S , we have the following:*

- The kernels of both \mathcal{P}_1 and \mathcal{P}_2 in $L^2(S)$ are trivial while the kernel of \mathcal{P}_1^* consists of constant pairs in \mathfrak{s}_0 .
- The operators \mathcal{P}_1^* , resp. \mathcal{P}_2^* are the L^2 adjoints of \mathcal{P}_1 , respectively \mathcal{P}_2 .
- The kernel of \mathcal{P}_2^* is the space of conformal Killing vectorfields on S .

Moreover the following identities hold true⁸, see [Ch-Kl]:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{P}_1^* \mathcal{P}_1 &= -\Delta_1 + K, & \mathcal{P}_1 \mathcal{P}_1^* &= -\Delta_0, \\ \mathcal{P}_2^* \mathcal{P}_2 &= -\frac{1}{2}\Delta_2 + K, & \mathcal{P}_2 \mathcal{P}_2^* &= -\frac{1}{2}(\Delta_1 + K).\end{aligned}\tag{3.0.23}$$

Proof. The statements about L^2 adjoints follow immediately by integrating formulas (3.0.21)-(3.0.22) on S . The formulas (3.0.23) follow easily by using the definitions and commuting derivatives. Note also that for $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_1$

$$\mathcal{P}_2^* \xi = -\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{L}_\xi \gamma$$

where γ denotes the induced horizontal metric as in Definition 3.0.4. □

As a simple consequence of (3.0.23) one derives the following L^2 estimates.

Proposition 3.0.36. *Let (S, γ) be a compact manifold with Gauss curvature K .*

i.) *The following identity holds for vectorfields f on S :*

$$\int_S (|\nabla f|^2 + K|f|^2) = \int_S (|\operatorname{div} f|^2 + |\operatorname{curl} f|^2) = \int_S |\mathcal{P}_1 f|^2 \tag{3.0.24}$$

⁸Here $\Delta_k : \mathfrak{s}_k \rightarrow \mathfrak{s}_k$, $k = 0, 1, 2$, is defined by $(\Delta_k U)_A = \nabla^a \nabla_a U_A$.

ii.) The following identity holds for symmetric, traceless, 2-tensorfields f on S :

$$\int_S (|\nabla f|^2 + 2K|f|^2) = 2 \int_S |\operatorname{div} f|^2 = 2 \int_S |\mathcal{P}_2 f|^2 \quad (3.0.25)$$

iii.) The following identity holds for pairs of functions (f, f_*) on S :

$$\int_S (|\nabla f|^2 + |\nabla f_*|^2) = \int_S |-\nabla f + (*\nabla f_*)|^2 = \int_S |\mathcal{P}_1^*(f, f_*)|^2 \quad (3.0.26)$$

iv.) The following identity holds for vectors f on S ,

$$\int_S (|\nabla f|^2 - K|f|^2) = 2 \int_S |\mathcal{P}_2^* f|^2 \quad (3.0.27)$$

Proof. See Chapter 2 in [Ch-Kl]. □

Bochner identities in the non-integrable case

We extend the identities above to the case of non-integrable horizontal structure.

Lemma 3.0.37. *Given a general possibly non-integrable horizontal structure, the Hodge operators and the Laplacians are related by the following relations for $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ and $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{P}_1^* \mathcal{P}_1 \xi &= -\Delta_1 \xi - \frac{1}{2} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* \xi, \\ \mathcal{P}_2 \mathcal{P}_2^* \xi &= -\frac{1}{2} \Delta_1 \xi + \frac{1}{4} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* \xi, \\ \mathcal{P}_2^* \mathcal{P}_2 u &= -\frac{1}{2} \Delta_2 u - \frac{1}{4} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* u. \end{aligned} \quad (3.0.28)$$

Proof. See the proof of Lemma 2.1.36 in [K-S:Kerr]. □

Using the pointwise relations (3.0.21) and (3.0.22) and the above lemma, we can deduce the following pointwise version of the L^2 estimates of Proposition 3.0.36.

Proposition 3.0.38. *Given a not necessarily integrable horizontal structure, the following pointwise relations hold:*

i. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$:*

$$|\nabla f|^2 - \frac{1}{2} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* f \cdot f = |\mathcal{P}_1 f|^2 + \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f - (\operatorname{div} f) f^a - (\operatorname{curl} f) ({}^* f)^a \right).$$

ii. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_2$:*

$$|\nabla f|^2 - \frac{1}{4} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* f \cdot f = 2 |\mathcal{P}_2 f|^2 + \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f - 2 (\operatorname{div} f)_b f^{ab} \right).$$

iii. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$:*

$$|\nabla f|^2 + \frac{1}{4} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* f \cdot f = 2 |\mathcal{P}_2^* f|^2 + \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f + 2 (\mathcal{P}_2^* f)^{ab} f_b \right).$$

Proof. The above relations are obtained by multiplying relations (3.0.28) by f and integrating by parts in the horizontal directions. \square

Remark 3.0.39. *In the integrable case the commutator $\in^{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b]$ is given by the standard Gauss formula in terms of K . In the non-integrable case it can be computed by using the generalized Gauss equation, see Proposition 3.0.25.*

Observe that in the relations obtained in Proposition 3.0.38, the divergence terms cannot be discarded upon integration because of the absence of an integrable surface. There are various ways to deal with this difficulty, such as to integrate (3.0.29)-(3.0.29) on the entire spacetime manifold \mathcal{M} .

Remark 3.0.40. *Note that the divergence terms in Proposition 3.0.38 can be re-expressed in terms of spacetime divergences based on the following lemma.*

Lemma 3.0.41. *For $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$, we have⁹*

$$\mathbf{D}^\alpha f_\alpha = \nabla^a f_a + (\eta + \underline{\eta}) \cdot f \quad (3.0.29)$$

where $\underline{\eta}_a := \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(e_a, \mathbf{D}_L \underline{L})$ and $\eta_a := \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(e_a, \mathbf{D}_L L)$, see Definition 3.1.1.

⁹Here, we extend the horizontal 1-form f as a full 1-form on \mathcal{M} by setting $f_3 = f_4 = 0$.

Proof. We have, using (3.1.3),

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{D}^\alpha f_\alpha - \nabla^a f_a &= -\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{D}_3 f_4 + \mathbf{D}_4 f_3) = -\frac{1}{2}(e_3(f_4) - f_{\mathbf{D}_{34}} + e_4(f_3) - f_{\mathbf{D}_{43}}) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(2\eta_a f_a + 2\underline{\eta}_a f_a) = (\eta + \underline{\eta}) \cdot f\end{aligned}$$

as stated. \square

Using (3.0.17) we can rewrite Proposition 3.0.38 as follows.

Proposition 3.0.42. *Given a not necessarily integrable horizontal structure, the following pointwise relations hold¹⁰:*

i. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$:*

$$\begin{aligned}|\nabla f|^2 + {}^{(h)}K|f|^2 &= |\mathcal{P}_1 f|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left(\left({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) {}^* f \right) \cdot f + \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_1 f], \\ \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_1 f] &:= \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f - (\text{div} f) f^a - (\text{curl} f) ({}^* f)^a \right).\end{aligned}\tag{3.0.30}$$

ii. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_2$:*

$$\begin{aligned}|\nabla f|^2 + 2 {}^{(h)}K|f|^2 &= 2|\mathcal{P}_2 f|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \left(\left({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) {}^* f \right) \cdot f + \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_2 f], \\ \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_2 f] &:= \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f - 2(\text{div} f)_b f^{ab} \right).\end{aligned}\tag{3.0.31}$$

iii. *The following identity holds for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$:*

$$\begin{aligned}|\nabla f|^2 - {}^{(h)}K|f|^2 &= 2|\mathcal{P}_2^* f|^2 - \frac{1}{2} \left(\left({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) {}^* f \right) \cdot f + \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_2^* f], \\ \text{div} [\mathcal{P}_2^* f] &:= \nabla_a \left(\nabla^a f \cdot f + 2(\mathcal{P}_2^* f)^{ab} f_b \right).\end{aligned}\tag{3.0.32}$$

Proof. From (3.0.17), we have for $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ and $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* f &= \frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4) {}^* f - {}^{(h)}K f, \\ \frac{1}{2} \in_{ab} [\nabla_a, \nabla_b] {}^* u &= \frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \nabla_4) {}^* u - 2 {}^{(h)}K u,\end{aligned}$$

from which we obtain the stated identities. \square

¹⁰Note that according to Lemma 3.0.41, the divergence terms in the proposition can be re-expressed in terms of the spacetime divergences, see Remark 3.0.40.

3.1 Horizontal structures and Einstein equations

We apply the general formalism for non-integrable structures to the case of a spacetime solution to the Einstein vacuum equation. For an application of the formalism to the Einstein-Maxwell equation, see [Giorgi:KN].

3.1.1 Ricci coefficients

Definition 3.1.1. *We define the horizontal 1-forms,*

$$\begin{aligned}\underline{\eta}(X) &:= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_L \underline{L}), & \eta(X) &:= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} L), \\ \underline{\xi}(X) &:= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}), & \xi(X) &:= \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(X, \mathbf{D}_L L).\end{aligned}$$

With these definitions we have,

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla_L X &:= {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_L X) = \mathbf{D}_L X - \underline{\eta}(X)L - \xi(X)\underline{L}, \\ \nabla_{\underline{L}} X &:= {}^{(h)}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} X) = \mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} X - \underline{\xi}(X)L - \eta(X)\underline{L}.\end{aligned}$$

In addition to the horizontal tensor-fields $\chi, \underline{\chi}, \underline{\eta}, \eta, \xi, \underline{\xi}$ introduced above we also define the scalars,

$$\underline{\omega} := \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}, L), \quad \omega := \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L L, \underline{L}),$$

and the horizontal 1-form,

$$\zeta(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X L, \underline{L}).$$

We summarize below the definition of the the horizontal 1-forms $\xi, \underline{\xi}, \eta, \underline{\eta}, \zeta \in \mathbf{O}_1$:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \xi(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L L, X), \quad \underline{\xi}(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}, X), \\ \eta(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} L, X), \quad \underline{\eta}(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L \underline{L}, X), \\ \zeta(X) = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_X L, \underline{L}), \end{array} \right. \quad (3.1.1)$$

and the real scalars

$$\omega = \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L L, \underline{L}), \quad \underline{\omega} = \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}, L). \quad (3.1.2)$$

Definition 3.1.2. *The horizontal tensor-fields $\chi, \underline{\chi}, \eta, \underline{\eta}, \zeta, \underline{\zeta}, \omega, \underline{\omega}$ are called the connection coefficients of the null pair (L, \underline{L}) . Given an arbitrary basis of horizontal vectorfields e_1, e_2 , we write using the short hand notation $\mathbf{D}_a = \mathbf{D}_{e_a}, a = 1, 2$,*

$$\begin{aligned}\underline{\chi}_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a \underline{L}, e_b), & \chi_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a L, e_b), \\ \underline{\xi}_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}, e_a), & \xi_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L L, e_a), \\ \underline{\omega} &= \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} \underline{L}, L), & \omega &= \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L L, \underline{L}), \\ \underline{\eta}_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_L \underline{L}, e_a), & \eta_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_{\underline{L}} L, e_a), \\ \zeta_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a L, \underline{L}).\end{aligned}$$

We easily derive the Ricci formulae,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{D}_a e_b &= \nabla_a e_b + \frac{1}{2} \chi_{ab} e_3 + \frac{1}{2} \underline{\chi}_{ab} e_4, \\ \mathbf{D}_a e_4 &= \chi_{ab} e_b - \zeta_a e_4, \\ \mathbf{D}_a e_3 &= \underline{\chi}_{ab} e_b + \zeta_a e_3, \\ \mathbf{D}_3 e_a &= \nabla_3 e_a + \eta_a e_3 + \underline{\xi}_a e_4, \\ \mathbf{D}_3 e_3 &= -2\underline{\omega} e_3 + 2\underline{\xi}_b e_b, \\ \mathbf{D}_3 e_4 &= 2\underline{\omega} e_4 + 2\underline{\eta}_b e_b, \\ \mathbf{D}_4 e_a &= \nabla_4 e_a + \underline{\eta}_a e_4 + \xi_a e_3, \\ \mathbf{D}_4 e_4 &= -2\omega e_4 + 2\xi_b e_b, \\ \mathbf{D}_4 e_3 &= 2\omega e_3 + 2\underline{\eta}_b e_b.\end{aligned}\tag{3.1.3}$$

3.1.2 Curvature and Weyl fields

Assume that $W \in \mathbf{T}_4^0(\mathcal{M})$ is a Weyl field, i.e.

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} W_{\alpha\beta\mu\nu} = -W_{\beta\alpha\mu\nu} = -W_{\alpha\beta\nu\mu} = W_{\mu\nu\alpha\beta}, \\ W_{\alpha\beta\mu\nu} + W_{\alpha\mu\nu\beta} + W_{\alpha\nu\beta\mu} = 0, \\ \mathbf{g}^{\beta\nu} W_{\alpha\beta\mu\nu} = 0. \end{array} \right.\tag{3.1.4}$$

We define the null components of the Weyl field W , $\alpha(W), \underline{\alpha}(W), \varrho(W) \in \mathbf{O}_2(\mathcal{M})$ and $\beta(W), \underline{\beta}(W) \in \mathbf{O}_1(\mathcal{M})$ by the formulas

$$\begin{cases} \alpha(W)(X, Y) = W(L, X, L, Y), \\ \underline{\alpha}(W)(X, Y) = W(\underline{L}, X, \underline{L}, Y), \\ \beta(W)(X) = \frac{1}{2}W(X, L, \underline{L}, L), \\ \underline{\beta}(W)(X) = \frac{1}{2}W(X, \underline{L}, \underline{L}, L), \\ \varrho(W)(X, Y) = W(X, \underline{L}, Y, L). \end{cases} \quad (3.1.5)$$

Recall that if W is a Weyl field its Hodge dual *W , defined by ${}^*W_{\alpha\beta\mu\nu} = \frac{1}{2}\epsilon_{\mu\nu}{}^{\rho\sigma}W_{\alpha\beta\rho\sigma}$, is also a Weyl field. We easily check the formulas,

$$\begin{cases} \underline{\alpha}({}^*W) = {}^*\underline{\alpha}(W), & \alpha({}^*W) = -{}^*\alpha(W), \\ \underline{\beta}({}^*W) = {}^*\underline{\beta}(W), & \beta({}^*W) = -{}^*\beta(W), \\ \varrho({}^*W) = {}^*\varrho(W). \end{cases} \quad (3.1.6)$$

It is easy to check that $\alpha, \underline{\alpha}$ are symmetric traceless horizontal tensor-fields. On the other hand the horizontal 2-tensorfield ϱ is neither symmetric nor traceless. It is convenient to express it in terms of the following two scalar quantities,

$$\rho(W) = \frac{1}{4}W(L, \underline{L}, L, \underline{L}), \quad {}^*\rho(W) = \frac{1}{4}{}^*W(L, \underline{L}, L, \underline{L}). \quad (3.1.7)$$

Observe also that,

$$\rho({}^*W) = {}^*\rho(W), \quad {}^*\rho({}^*W) = -\rho.$$

Thus,

$$\varrho(X, Y) = (-\rho\gamma(X, Y) + {}^*\rho \in (X, Y)), \quad \forall X, Y \in \mathbf{O}(\mathcal{M}). \quad (3.1.8)$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} W_{a3b4} &= \varrho_{ab} = (-\rho\delta_{ab} + {}^*\rho \in_{ab}), \\ W_{ab34} &= 2 \in_{ab} {}^*\rho, \\ W_{abcd} &= -\in_{ab}\in_{cd} \rho, \\ W_{abc3} &= \in_{ab} {}^*\underline{\beta}_c, \\ W_{abc4} &= -\in_{ab} {}^*\beta_c. \end{aligned}$$

3.1.3 Pairing transformations

In addition to the Hodge duality we will need to take into account the duality with respect to the interchange of $e_4 = L, e_3 = \underline{L}$, which we call a pairing transformation. Clearly, under this transformation, $\alpha \leftrightarrow \underline{\alpha}, \beta \leftrightarrow -\underline{\beta}, \rho \leftrightarrow \rho, {}^*\rho \leftrightarrow {}^*\rho, \varrho \leftrightarrow \check{\varrho}$ with $\check{\varrho}_{ab} := \varrho_{ba}$. One has to be careful however when combining the Hodge dual and pairing transformations. In that case we have, ${}^*\underline{\alpha} \leftrightarrow -{}^*\alpha, {}^*\underline{\beta} \leftrightarrow {}^*\beta$. This is due to the fact that under the pairing transformation $\in_{ab} \rightarrow -\in_{ab}$ (since $\in_{ab} = \in_{ab34}$). Indeed, for example,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^*\underline{\alpha}_{ab} &= \underline{\alpha}({}^*W)_{ab} = {}^*W_{a3b3} = -\in_{a3c4} W_{c3b3} = \in_{ac34} W_{c3b3} = \in_{ac} \underline{\alpha}_{cb}, \\ {}^*\alpha_{ab} &= \alpha({}^*W)_{ab} = {}^*W_{a4b4} = -\in_{a4c3} W_{c4b4} = -\in_{cb34} W_{c4b4} = -\in_{ac} \alpha_{cb}. \end{aligned}$$

The reason ${}^*\beta$ transforms to ${}^*\underline{\beta}$ and not $-{}^*\underline{\beta}$ is that in this case there are two sign changes. In the case of ${}^*\rho$ we have

$$4 {}^*\rho = {}^*\mathbf{R}_{3434} = \frac{1}{2} \in_{34} {}^{ab}\mathbf{R}_{ab34} \leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2} \in_{43} {}^{ab}\mathbf{R}_{ab43} = 4 {}^*\rho.$$

Here is a schematic presentation of all pairing transformations.

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \leftrightarrow \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \\ \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \leftrightarrow \text{tr} \chi \\ {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \leftrightarrow -{}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \\ \underline{\xi}_a \leftrightarrow \xi_a \\ \underline{\omega} \leftrightarrow \omega \\ \underline{\eta}_a \leftrightarrow \eta_a \\ \zeta_a \leftrightarrow -\zeta_a \\ \alpha \leftrightarrow \underline{\alpha} \\ \beta \leftrightarrow -\underline{\beta} \\ \rho \leftrightarrow \rho \\ \varrho \leftrightarrow \check{\varrho} \end{array} \right. \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \in_{ab} \leftrightarrow -\in_{ab} \\ {}^*\widehat{\chi}_{ab} \leftrightarrow -{}^*\widehat{\chi}_{ab} \\ {}^*\underline{\xi}_a \leftrightarrow -{}^*\xi_a \\ {}^*\underline{\eta}_a \leftrightarrow -{}^*\eta_a \\ {}^*\zeta_a \leftrightarrow {}^*\zeta_a \\ {}^*\alpha \leftrightarrow -{}^*\underline{\alpha} \\ {}^*\beta \leftrightarrow {}^*\underline{\beta} \\ {}^*\rho \leftrightarrow {}^*\rho \\ {}^*(c)\nabla_a \leftrightarrow -{}^*(c)\nabla_a \\ \text{curl} \leftrightarrow -\text{curl} \end{array} \right.$$

The decomposition above for Weyl fields applies in particular to the Riemann curvature tensor \mathbf{R} of a vacuum spacetime.

In the case of a vacuum spacetime, the non-integrable Gauss curvature defined by (3.0.18) becomes

$${}^{(h)}K = -\frac{1}{4} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{4} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \rho. \quad (3.1.9)$$

3.1.4 Horizontal tensor \mathbf{B}

We calculate below the components of the horizontal curvature tensor \mathbf{B} defined by the formula, see (3.0.13),

$$\mathbf{B}_{ab\mu\nu} := (\Lambda_\mu)_{3a}(\Lambda_\nu)_{b4} + (\Lambda_\mu)_{4a}(\Lambda_\nu)_{b3} - (\Lambda_\nu)_{3a}(\Lambda_\mu)_{b4} - (\Lambda_\nu)_{4a}(\Lambda_\mu)_{b3}.$$

Proposition 3.1.3. *The components of \mathbf{B} are given by the following formulas:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_{abc3} &= -\mathbf{B}_{ab3c} = 2(-\underline{\chi}_{ca}\eta_b + \underline{\chi}_{cb}\eta_a - \chi_{ca}\underline{\xi}_b + \chi_{cb}\underline{\xi}_a), \\ \mathbf{B}_{abc4} &= -\mathbf{B}_{ab4c} = 2(-\chi_{ca}\underline{\eta}_b + \chi_{cb}\underline{\eta}_a - \underline{\chi}_{ca}\xi_b + \underline{\chi}_{cb}\xi_a), \\ \mathbf{B}_{ab34} &= -\mathbf{B}_{ab43} = 4(-\underline{\xi}_a\xi_b + \xi_a\underline{\xi}_b - \eta_a\underline{\eta}_b + \underline{\eta}_a\eta_b), \\ \mathbf{B}_{abcd} &= -\mathbf{B}_{abdc} = \chi_{bc}\underline{\chi}_{ad} + \underline{\chi}_{bc}\chi_{ad} - \chi_{ac}\underline{\chi}_{bd} - \underline{\chi}_{ac}\chi_{bd}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.10}$$

The above can also be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_{abc3} &= -tr \underline{\chi}(\delta_{ca}\eta_b - \delta_{cb}\eta_a) - {}^{(a)}tr \underline{\chi}(\in_{ca}\eta_b - \in_{cb}\eta_a) \\ &\quad + 2(-\widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{ca}\eta_b + \widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{cb}\eta_a - \chi_{ca}\underline{\xi}_b + \chi_{cb}\underline{\xi}_a), \\ \mathbf{B}_{abc4} &= -tr \chi(\delta_{ca}\underline{\eta}_b - \delta_{cb}\underline{\eta}_a) - {}^{(a)}tr \chi(\in_{ca}\underline{\eta}_b - \in_{cb}\underline{\eta}_a) \\ &\quad + 2(-\widehat{\chi}_{ca}\underline{\eta}_b + \widehat{\chi}_{cb}\underline{\eta}_a - \underline{\chi}_{ca}\xi_b + \underline{\chi}_{cb}\xi_a). \end{aligned} \tag{3.1.11}$$

The only non vanishing component of \mathbf{B}_{abcd} is given by

$$\mathbf{B}_{1212} = -\mathbf{B}_{1221} = \mathbf{B}_{2121} = -\frac{1}{2}tr \chi tr \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2}{}^{(a)}tr \chi {}^{(a)}tr \underline{\chi} + \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}}.$$

Proof. We write recalling the definition $(\Lambda_\mu)_{\alpha\beta} = \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_\mu e_\beta, e_\alpha)$ and definition of Ricci coefficients, see Definition 3.1.2,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_{abc3} &= (\Lambda_c)_{3a}(\Lambda_3)_{b4} + (\Lambda_c)_{4a}(\Lambda_3)_{b3} - (\Lambda_3)_{3a}(\Lambda_c)_{b4} - (\Lambda_3)_{4a}(\Lambda_c)_{b3} \\ &= -2\underline{\chi}_{ca}\eta_b - 2\underline{\chi}_{ca}\underline{\xi}_b + 2\underline{\xi}_a\chi_{cb} + 2\underline{\eta}_a\underline{\chi}_{cb} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_{ab34} &= (\Lambda_3)_{3a}(\Lambda_4)_{b4} + (\Lambda_3)_{4a}(\Lambda_4)_{b3} - (\Lambda_4)_{3a}(\Lambda_3)_{b4} - (\Lambda_4)_{4a}(\Lambda_3)_{b3} \\ &= 4(-\underline{\xi}_a)\xi_b + 4(-\eta_a)\underline{\eta}_b - 4(-\underline{\eta}_a)\eta_b - 4(\underline{\eta}_a)\eta_b - (-\xi_a)\underline{\xi}_b \\ &= 4(-\underline{\xi}_a\xi_b + \xi_a\underline{\xi}_b - \eta_a\underline{\eta}_b + \underline{\eta}_a\eta_b) \end{aligned}$$

For the remaining formulas see (3.0.19) and (3.0.16). □

3.1.5 Null structure equations

We state below the null structure equation in the general setting discussed above. We assume given a vacuum spacetime endowed with a general null frame (e_3, e_4, e_1, e_2) relative to which we define our connection and curvature coefficients.

Proposition 3.1.4 (Null structure equations). *The connection coefficients verify the following equations:*

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -|\widehat{\underline{\chi}}|^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 - {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2) + 2 \text{div} \underline{\xi} - 2 \underline{\omega} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 \underline{\xi} \cdot (\underline{\eta} + \underline{\eta} - 2\zeta), \\
\nabla_3 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 \text{curl} \underline{\xi} - 2 \underline{\omega} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 \underline{\xi} \wedge (-\underline{\eta} + \underline{\eta} + 2\zeta), \\
\nabla_3 \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} - 2 \underline{\omega} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} (\underline{\eta} + \underline{\eta} - 2\zeta) - \underline{\alpha}, \\
\\
\nabla_3 \text{tr} \chi &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 2 \text{div} \eta + 2 \underline{\omega} \text{tr} \chi + 2(\underline{\xi} \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\eta|^2) + 2\rho, \\
\nabla_3 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \wedge \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi + \text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi) + 2 \text{curl} \eta + 2 \underline{\omega} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 2 \underline{\xi} \wedge \underline{\xi} - 2 {}^*\rho, \\
\nabla_3 \widehat{\chi} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \chi \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2}(- {}^*\widehat{\underline{\chi}} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + {}^*\widehat{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}) + \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \eta + 2 \underline{\omega} \widehat{\chi} \\
&\quad + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} + \eta \widehat{\otimes} \eta, \\
\\
\nabla_4 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 \text{div} \underline{\eta} + 2 \omega \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2(\underline{\xi} \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\underline{\eta}|^2) + 2\rho, \\
\nabla_4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \wedge \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}) + 2 \text{curl} \underline{\eta} + 2 \omega {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 \underline{\xi} \wedge \underline{\xi} + 2 {}^*\rho, \\
\nabla_4 \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \chi \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2}(- {}^*\widehat{\underline{\chi}} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + {}^*\widehat{\underline{\chi}} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi) + \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta} + 2 \omega \widehat{\underline{\chi}} \\
&\quad + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} + \underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta}, \\
\\
\nabla_4 \text{tr} \chi &= -|\widehat{\chi}|^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \chi^2 - {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi^2) + 2 \text{div} \xi - 2 \omega \text{tr} \chi + 2 \underline{\xi} \cdot (\underline{\eta} + \eta + 2\zeta), \\
\nabla_4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi &= -\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 2 \text{curl} \xi - 2 \omega {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 2 \underline{\xi} \wedge (-\underline{\eta} + \eta - 2\zeta), \\
\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} &= -\text{tr} \chi \widehat{\chi} + \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi - 2 \omega \widehat{\chi} + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} (\underline{\eta} + \eta + 2\zeta) - \alpha.
\end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 \zeta + 2\nabla \omega &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\zeta + \eta) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\zeta + \eta) - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi ({}^* \zeta + {}^* \eta) + 2\omega (\zeta - \eta) \\
&\quad + \widehat{\chi} \cdot \underline{\xi} + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \underline{\xi} + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \underline{\xi} + 2\omega \underline{\xi} - \underline{\beta}, \\
\nabla_4 \zeta - 2\nabla \omega &= \widehat{\chi} \cdot (-\zeta + \underline{\eta}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (-\zeta + \underline{\eta}) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi (-{}^* \zeta + {}^* \underline{\eta}) + 2\omega (\zeta + \underline{\eta}) \\
&\quad - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \xi - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \xi - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \xi - 2\omega \xi - \beta, \\
\nabla_3 \underline{\eta} - \nabla_4 \underline{\xi} &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\underline{\eta} - \eta) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\underline{\eta} - \eta) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi ({}^* \underline{\eta} - {}^* \eta) - 4\omega \underline{\xi} + \underline{\beta}, \\
\nabla_4 \eta - \nabla_3 \xi &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\eta - \underline{\eta}) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\eta - \underline{\eta}) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi ({}^* \eta - {}^* \underline{\eta}) - 4\omega \xi - \beta,
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \omega - 4\omega \omega - \xi \cdot \underline{\xi} - (\eta - \underline{\eta}) \cdot \zeta + \eta \cdot \underline{\eta} = \rho.$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{div} \widehat{\chi} + \zeta \cdot \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} \nabla \text{tr} \chi + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \zeta - \frac{1}{2} {}^* \nabla {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \zeta - {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \eta - {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \xi - \beta, \\
\text{div} \widehat{\chi} - \zeta \cdot \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} \nabla \text{tr} \chi - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \zeta - \frac{1}{2} {}^* \nabla {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \zeta - {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \underline{\eta} - {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* \underline{\xi} + \underline{\beta},
\end{aligned}$$

and¹¹

$$\text{curl} \zeta = -\frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \wedge \widehat{\chi} + \frac{1}{4} (\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi - \text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi) + \omega {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi - \omega {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi + {}^* \rho.$$

Proof. Except for the fact that the order of indices in $\chi, \underline{\chi}$ is important, since they are no longer symmetric, the derivation is exactly as in [Ch-Kl]. \square

3.1.6 Null Bianchi identities

We state below the equations verified by the null curvature components of an Einstein vacuum space-time.

¹¹Note that this equation follows from expanding \mathbf{R}_{34ab} .

Proposition 3.1.5 (Null Bianchi identities). *The curvature components verify the following equations:*

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 \alpha - \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \alpha + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \alpha) + 4\omega \alpha + (\zeta + 4\eta) \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}), \\
\nabla_4 \beta - \text{div } \alpha &= -2(\text{tr } \chi \beta - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \beta) - 2\omega \beta + \alpha \cdot (2\zeta + \eta) + 3(\xi \rho + {}^* \xi {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_3 \beta + \text{div } \varrho &= -(\text{tr } \chi \beta + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \beta) + 2\omega \beta + 2\beta \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) + \alpha \cdot \xi, \\
\nabla_4 \rho - \text{div } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \rho) + (2\eta + \zeta) \cdot \beta - 2\xi \cdot \beta - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \alpha, \\
\nabla_4 {}^* \rho + \text{curl } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^* \rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) - (2\eta + \zeta) \cdot {}^* \beta - 2\xi \cdot {}^* \beta + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^* \alpha, \\
\nabla_3 \rho + \text{div } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \rho) - (2\eta - \zeta) \cdot \underline{\beta} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \underline{\alpha}, \\
\nabla_3 {}^* \rho + \text{curl } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^* \rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) - (2\eta - \zeta) \cdot {}^* \underline{\beta} - 2\xi \cdot {}^* \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^* \underline{\alpha}, \\
\nabla_4 \underline{\beta} - \text{div } \check{\varrho} &= -(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\beta} + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \underline{\beta}) + 2\omega \underline{\beta} + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \underline{\eta} - {}^* \rho {}^* \underline{\eta}) - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \xi, \\
\nabla_3 \underline{\beta} + \text{div } \underline{\alpha} &= -2(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\beta} - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \underline{\beta}) - 2\omega \underline{\beta} - \underline{\alpha} \cdot (-2\zeta + \eta) - 3(\xi \underline{\rho} - {}^* \xi {}^* \underline{\rho}), \\
\nabla_4 \underline{\alpha} + \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\alpha} + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^* \underline{\alpha}) + 4\omega \underline{\alpha} + (\zeta - 4\eta) \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} - {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

Here,

$$\text{div } \varrho = -(\nabla \rho + {}^* \nabla {}^* \rho), \quad \text{div } \check{\varrho} = -(\nabla \rho - {}^* \nabla {}^* \rho). \quad (3.1.12)$$

Proof. The proof follows line by line from the derivation in [Ch-Kl] except, once more, for keeping track of the lack of symmetry for $\chi, \underline{\chi}$. Note also that $\check{\varrho}_{ab} = \varrho_{ba}$ and that $(\text{div } \varrho)_b = \nabla^a \varrho_{ab}$. \square

Remark 3.1.6. *Note that both the null structure and null Bianchi equations are invariant with respect to the pairing transformations of section 3.1.3.*

3.1.7 Null Bianchi Equations using Hodge Operators

The special structure of the null structure equations is more apparent if we make use of the Hodge operators $\mathcal{P}_1, \mathcal{P}_2, \mathcal{P}_1^*, \mathcal{P}_2^*$. In doing this it is important to remember that \mathcal{P}_1 takes \mathfrak{s}_1 to \mathfrak{s}_0 and that these latter are pairs of scalars. It is for this reason that

Proposition 3.1.7 (Null structure equations using Hodge operators).

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 \alpha + 2 \mathcal{D}_2^* \beta &= -\frac{1}{2} (tr \chi \alpha + {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \alpha) + 4 \omega \alpha + (\zeta + 4\eta) \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}), \\
\nabla_4 \beta - \mathcal{D}_2 \alpha &= -2(tr \chi \beta - {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \beta) - 2\omega \beta + \alpha \cdot (2\zeta + \eta) + 3(\xi \rho + {}^* \xi {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_3 \beta - \mathcal{D}_1^* (-\rho, {}^* \rho) &= -(tr \chi \beta + {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \beta) + 2\omega \beta + 2\beta \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) + \alpha \cdot \xi, \\
\nabla_4 (-\rho, {}^* \rho) + \mathcal{D}_1 \beta &= -\frac{3}{2} tr \chi (-\rho, {}^* \rho) - \frac{3}{2} {}^{(a)} tr \chi (-{}^* \rho, -\rho) - (2\eta + \zeta) \cdot (\beta, {}^* \beta) \\
&\quad + 2\xi \cdot (\beta, -{}^* \beta) + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot (\alpha, {}^* \alpha), \\
\nabla_3 (\rho, {}^* \rho) + \mathcal{D}_1 \beta &= -\frac{3}{2} tr \chi (\rho, {}^* \rho) - \frac{3}{2} {}^{(a)} tr \chi (-{}^* \rho, \rho) - (2\eta - \zeta) \cdot (\beta, {}^* \beta) \\
&\quad + 2\xi \cdot (\beta, -{}^* \beta) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot (\alpha, {}^* \alpha), \\
\nabla_4 \beta - \mathcal{D}_1^* (\rho, {}^* \rho) &= -(tr \chi \beta + {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \beta) + 2\omega \beta + 2\beta \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \eta - {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) - \alpha \cdot \xi, \\
\nabla_3 \beta + \mathcal{D}_2 \alpha &= -2(tr \chi \beta - {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \beta) - 2\omega \beta - \alpha \cdot (-2\zeta + \eta) - 3(\xi \rho - {}^* \xi {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_4 \alpha - 2 \mathcal{D}_2^* \beta &= -\frac{1}{2} (tr \chi \alpha + {}^{(a)} tr \chi {}^* \alpha) + 4\omega \alpha + (\zeta - 4\eta) \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} - {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

Remark 3.1.8. As we shall see later further simplification can be obtained by introducing complex horizontal tensors.

3.1.8 Main equations using conformally invariant derivatives

Consider frame transformations of the form

$$e'_3 = \lambda^{-1} e_3, \quad e'_4 = \lambda e_4, \quad e'_a = e_a.$$

Note that under the above mentioned frame transformation we have

$$\begin{aligned}
tr \chi' &= \lambda^{-1} tr \chi, \quad {}^{(a)} tr \chi' = \lambda^{-1} {}^{(a)} tr \chi, \quad tr \chi' = \lambda tr \chi, \quad {}^{(a)} tr \chi' = \lambda {}^{(a)} tr \chi, \\
\xi' &= \lambda^2 \xi, \quad \eta' = \eta, \quad \underline{\eta}' = \underline{\eta}, \quad \underline{\xi}' = \lambda^{-2} \underline{\xi}, \\
\alpha' &= \lambda^2 \alpha, \quad \beta' = \lambda \beta, \quad \rho' = \rho, \quad {}^* \rho' = {}^* \rho, \quad \underline{\beta}' = \lambda^{-1} \underline{\beta}, \quad \underline{\alpha}' = \lambda^{-2} \underline{\alpha},
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\underline{\omega}' = \lambda^{-1} \left(\underline{\omega} + \frac{1}{2} e_3(\log \lambda) \right), \quad \omega' = \lambda \left(\omega - \frac{1}{2} e_4(\log \lambda) \right), \quad \zeta' = \zeta - \nabla(\log \lambda).$$

Definition 3.1.9 (*s*-conformally invariants). We say that a horizontal tensor f is *s*-conformally invariant if, under the conformal frame transformation above, it changes as $f' = \lambda^s f$.

Remark 3.1.10. Note that in the case when f is a Ricci or curvature coefficient s corresponds precisely to the signature, as define in Chapter 5 of [Ch-Kl].

Remark 3.1.11. If f s -conformal invariant, then $\nabla_3 f, \nabla_4 f, \nabla_a f$ are not conformal invariant.

We correct the lacking of being conformal invariant by making the following definition.

Lemma 3.1.12. If f is s -conformal invariant, then

1. ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3 f := \nabla_3 f - 2s\omega f$ is $(s-1)$ -conformally invariant.
2. ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 f := \nabla_4 f + 2s\omega f$ is $(s+1)$ -conformally invariant.
3. ${}^{(c)}\nabla_A f := \nabla_A f + s\zeta_A f$ is s -conformally invariant.

Proof. Immediate verification. □

Remark 3.1.13. Note that s is precisely what in [Ch-Kl] is called the signature of the tensor. In GHP formalism [GHP], the signature is related to the spin and the boost weights of the complex scalars.

Using these definitions we rewrite the main equations as follows.

Proposition 3.1.14. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -|\widehat{\underline{\chi}}|^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 - {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2) + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div} \underline{\xi} + 2\underline{\xi} \cdot (\eta + \underline{\eta}), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl} \underline{\xi} + 2\underline{\xi} \wedge (-\eta + \underline{\eta}), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\underline{\xi}} + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} (\eta + \underline{\eta}) - \underline{\alpha}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr} \chi &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div} \eta + 2(\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\eta|^2) + 2\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \wedge \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi + \text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi) + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl} \eta + 2\underline{\xi} \wedge \xi - 2 {}^*\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\chi} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \chi \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \text{tr} \chi \widehat{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2}(- {}^*\widehat{\underline{\chi}} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi + {}^*\widehat{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi) + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \eta + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} \xi + \eta \widehat{\otimes} \eta, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \cdot \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div} \underline{\eta} + 2(\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\eta|^2) + 2\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \wedge \widehat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{2}({}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} + \text{tr} \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi}) + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl} \underline{\eta} + 2\underline{\xi} \wedge \underline{\xi} + 2 {}^*\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr} \chi \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + \text{tr} \chi \widehat{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2}(- {}^*\widehat{\chi} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} + {}^*\widehat{\underline{\chi}} {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi) + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta} + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} + \underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta},
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \chi &= -|\widehat{\chi}|^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi^2 - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi^2) + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div } \xi + 2\xi \cdot (\underline{\eta} + \eta), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi &= -\text{tr } \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \xi + 2\xi \wedge (-\underline{\eta} + \eta), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} &= -\text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi + \xi \widehat{\otimes} (\underline{\eta} + \eta) - \alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\eta} - {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\xi} &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\underline{\eta} - \eta) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi (\underline{\eta} - \eta) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi ({}^*\eta - {}^*\eta) + \underline{\beta}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \eta - {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \xi &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\eta - \underline{\eta}) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi (\eta - \underline{\eta}) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi ({}^*\eta - {}^*\eta) - \beta.
\end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\text{div } \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla (\text{tr } \chi) - \frac{1}{2} {}^* {}^{(c)}\nabla ({}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi) - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\eta - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\xi - \beta, \\
{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\widehat{\chi}} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2} {}^* {}^{(c)}\nabla ({}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}) - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\eta - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\xi + \beta.
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition 3.1.15. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha - {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \alpha + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\alpha) + 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^*\rho {}^*\widehat{\chi}), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \beta - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha &= -2(\text{tr } \chi \beta - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\beta) + \alpha \cdot \underline{\eta} + 3(\xi \rho + {}^*\xi {}^*\rho), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \beta + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \varrho &= -(\text{tr } \chi \beta + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\beta) + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^*\rho {}^*\eta) + \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \rho - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho) + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \beta - 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot \alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^*\beta - 2\xi \cdot {}^*\beta + \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^*\alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \rho + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho) - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \underline{\beta} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot \underline{\alpha}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^*\underline{\beta} - 2\xi \cdot {}^*\underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^*\underline{\alpha}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\beta} - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \check{\varrho} &= -(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\beta} + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\underline{\beta}) + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \underline{\eta} - {}^*\rho {}^*\underline{\eta}) - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \xi, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\beta} + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\alpha} &= -2(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\beta} - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\underline{\beta}) - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \eta - 3(\underline{\xi} \rho - {}^*\underline{\xi} {}^*\rho), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\alpha} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \underline{\alpha} + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\underline{\alpha}) - 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} - {}^*\rho {}^*\widehat{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

3.1.9 Spacetimes of Petrov type D

Consider an Einstein vacuum spacetime $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$. A spacetime is said to be of type D if there exists an horizontal structure for which $\alpha, \beta, \underline{\beta}, \underline{\alpha}$ vanish identically. The main

example is provided by the Kerr family. Using the first and last equations in proposition 3.1.5 we deduce, for any spacetime of type D that $\frac{3}{2}(\rho\widehat{\chi} + {}^*\rho {}^*\widehat{\chi})$ and $\frac{3}{2}(\rho\underline{\widehat{\chi}} - {}^*\rho {}^*\underline{\widehat{\chi}})$ from which we easily deduce that $\widehat{\chi} = \underline{\widehat{\chi}} = 0$. must vanish. Similarly, using the second and second to last equations of the same proposition, we deduce that $\frac{3}{2}(\xi\rho + {}^*\xi {}^*\rho) = 0$ and $\frac{3}{2}(\xi\rho - {}^*\xi {}^*\rho) = 0$ from which we also infer that $\xi = \underline{\xi} = 0$. We obtain the well known Penrose-Saks theorem according to which, if a spacetime is of type D we must have, relative to the correspondinh horizontal structure,

$$\widehat{\chi} = \underline{\widehat{\chi}} = \xi = \underline{\xi} = 0 \quad (3.1.13)$$

3.1.10 Commutation formulas

Lemma 3.1.16. *Let $U_A = U_{a_1 \dots a_k}$ be a general k -horizontal tensorfield.*

1. *We have*

$$[\nabla_3, \nabla_b]U_A = -\underline{\chi}_{bc} \nabla_c U_A + (\eta_b - \zeta_b) \nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b \nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1 \dots c \dots a_k}. \quad (3.1.14)$$

2. *We have*

$$[\nabla_4, \nabla_b]U_A = -\chi_{bc} \nabla_c U_a + (\underline{\eta}_b + \zeta_b) \nabla_4 U_a + \xi_b \nabla_3 U_a + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 b} U_{a_1 \dots c \dots a_k} \quad (3.1.15)$$

3. *We have*

$$[\nabla_4, \nabla_3]U_A = 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) \nabla_b U_A + 2\omega \nabla_3 U_A - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 3} U_{a_1 \dots c \dots a_k} \quad (3.1.16)$$

where, recall Proposition 3.1.3 and that $\dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\mu\nu} := \mathbf{R}_{ab\mu\nu} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{B}_{ab\mu\nu}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ac3b} &= -\epsilon_{ac} {}^*\underline{\beta}_b + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} (\delta_{ca} \eta_b - \delta_{cb} \eta_a) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} (\epsilon_{ca} \eta_b - \epsilon_{cb} \eta_a) \\ &\quad - \left(-\widehat{\chi}_{ca} \underline{\eta}_b + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi}_{cb} \underline{\eta}_a - \frac{1}{2} \underline{\chi}_{ca} \xi_b + \underline{\chi}_{cb} \xi_a \right), \\ \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ac4b} &= \epsilon_{ac} {}^*\beta_b + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\delta_{ca} \underline{\eta}_b - \delta_{cb} \underline{\eta}_a) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi (\epsilon_{ca} \underline{\eta}_b - \epsilon_{cb} \underline{\eta}_a) \\ &\quad - \left(-\widehat{\chi}_{ca} \underline{\eta}_b + \widehat{\chi}_{cb} \underline{\eta}_a - \underline{\chi}_{ca} \xi_b + \underline{\chi}_{cb} \xi_a \right), \\ \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab43} &= -2 \epsilon_{ab} {}^*\rho - 2 \left(-\eta_a \underline{\eta}_b + \underline{\eta}_a \eta_b - \underline{\xi}_a \xi_b + \xi_a \underline{\xi}_b \right). \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.17)$$

Proof. See the proof of Lemma 2.2.7 in [GKS-2022]. As a corollary we derive □

Lemma 3.1.17. *The following commutation formulas hold true:*

1. *Given $f \in \mathfrak{s}_0$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_3, \nabla_a]f &= -\frac{1}{2} \left(tr \underline{\chi} \nabla_a f + {}^{(a)}tr \underline{\chi} {}^* \nabla_a f \right) + (\eta_a - \zeta_a) \nabla_3 f - \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \nabla_b f \\
&\quad + \underline{\xi}_a \nabla_4 f, \\
[\nabla_4, \nabla_a]f &= -\frac{1}{2} \left(tr \chi \nabla_a f + {}^{(a)}tr \chi {}^* \nabla_a f \right) + (\underline{\eta}_a + \zeta_a) \nabla_4 f - \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \nabla_b f \\
&\quad + \xi_a \nabla_3 f, \\
[\nabla_4, \nabla_3]f &= 2(\underline{\eta} - \eta) \cdot \nabla f + 2\omega \nabla_3 f - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla_4 f.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.18}$$

2. *Given $u \in \mathfrak{s}_1$, we have*

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_3, \nabla_a]u_b &= -\frac{1}{2} tr \underline{\chi} (\nabla_a u_b + \eta_b u_a - \delta_{ab} \eta \cdot u) \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}tr \underline{\chi} ({}^* \nabla_a u_b + \eta_b {}^* u_a - \epsilon_{ab} \eta \cdot u) \\
&\quad + (\eta - \zeta)_a \nabla_3 u_b + Err_{3ab}[u], \\
Err_{3ab}[u] &= -{}^* \underline{\beta}_a {}^* u_b + \underline{\xi}_a \nabla_4 u_b - \underline{\xi}_b \chi_{ac} u_c + \chi_{ab} \underline{\xi} \cdot u - \widehat{\chi}_{ac} \nabla_c u_b - \eta_b \widehat{\chi}_{ac} u_c \\
&\quad + \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \eta \cdot u,
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.19}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_4, \nabla_a]u_b &= -\frac{1}{2} tr \chi (\nabla_a u_b + \underline{\eta}_b u_a - \delta_{ab} \underline{\eta} \cdot u) \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}tr \chi ({}^* \nabla_a u_b + \underline{\eta}_b {}^* u_a - \epsilon_{ab} \underline{\eta} \cdot u) + (\underline{\eta} + \zeta)_a \nabla_4 u_b \\
&\quad + Err_{4ab}[u], \\
Err_{4ab}[u] &= {}^* \beta_a {}^* u_b + \xi_a \nabla_3 u_b - \xi_b \underline{\chi}_{ac} u_c + \underline{\chi}_{ab} \xi \cdot u - \widehat{\chi}_{ac} \nabla_c u_b - \underline{\eta}_b \widehat{\chi}_{ac} u_c \\
&\quad + \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \underline{\eta} \cdot u,
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.20}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_4, \nabla_3]u_a &= 2\omega \nabla_3 u_a - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla_4 u_a + 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) \nabla_b u_a + 2(\underline{\eta} \cdot u) \eta_a - 2(\eta \cdot u) \underline{\eta}_a \\
&\quad - 2 {}^* \rho {}^* u_a + Err_{43a}[u], \\
Err_{43a}[u] &= 2(\underline{\xi}_a \xi_b - \xi_a \underline{\xi}_b) u^b.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.21}$$

3. Given $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_3, \nabla_a]u_{bc} &= -\frac{1}{2}tr\chi(\nabla_a u_{bc} + \eta_b u_{ac} + \eta_c u_{ab} - \delta_{ab}(\eta \cdot u)_c - \delta_{ac}(\eta \cdot u)_b) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}{}^{(a)}tr\chi({}^*\nabla_a u_{bc} + \eta_b {}^*u_{ac} + \eta_c {}^*u_{ab} - \epsilon_{ab}(\eta \cdot u)_c - \epsilon_{ac}(\eta \cdot u)_b) \\ &\quad + (\eta_a - \zeta_a)\nabla_3 u_{bc} + Err_{3abc}[u], \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.22)$$

$$\begin{aligned} Err_{3abc}[u] &= -2{}^*\beta_a {}^*u_{bc} + \xi_a \nabla_4 u_{bc} - \xi_b \chi_{ad} u_{dc} - \xi_c \chi_{ad} u_{bd} + \chi_{ab} \xi_d u_{dc} \\ &\quad + \chi_{ac} \xi_d u_{bd} - \widehat{\chi}_{ad} \nabla_d u_{bc} - \eta_b \widehat{\chi}_{ad} u_{dc} - \eta_c \widehat{\chi}_{ad} u_{bd} + \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \eta_d u_{dc} + \widehat{\chi}_{ac} \eta_d u_{bd}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_4, \nabla_a]u_{bc} &= -\frac{1}{2}tr\chi(\nabla_a u_{bc} + \underline{\eta}_b u_{ac} + \underline{\eta}_c u_{ab} - \delta_{ab}(\underline{\eta} \cdot u)_c - \delta_{ac}(\underline{\eta} \cdot u)_b) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}{}^{(a)}tr\chi({}^*\nabla_a u_{bc} + \underline{\eta}_b {}^*u_{ac} + \underline{\eta}_c {}^*u_{ab} - \epsilon_{ab}(\underline{\eta} \cdot u)_c - \epsilon_{ac}(\underline{\eta} \cdot u)_b) \\ &\quad + (\underline{\eta}_a + \zeta_a)\nabla_4 u_{bc} + Err_{4abc}[u], \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.23)$$

$$\begin{aligned} Err_{4abc}[u] &= 2{}^*\beta_a {}^*u_{bc} + \xi_a \nabla_3 u_{bc} - \xi_b \chi_{ad} u_{dc} - \xi_c \chi_{ad} u_{bd} + \chi_{ab} \xi_d u_{dc} + \chi_{ac} \xi_d u_{bd} \\ &\quad - \widehat{\chi}_{ad} \nabla_d u_{bc} - \underline{\eta}_b \widehat{\chi}_{ad} u_{dc} - \underline{\eta}_c \widehat{\chi}_{ad} u_{bd} + \widehat{\chi}_{ab} \underline{\eta}_d u_{dc} + \widehat{\chi}_{ac} \underline{\eta}_d u_{bd}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_4, \nabla_3]u_{ab} &= 2\omega \nabla_3 u_{ab} - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla_4 u_{ab} + 2(\underline{\eta}_c - \eta_c)\nabla_c u_{ab} \\ &\quad - 2\underline{\eta}_a \eta_c u_{bc} - 2\underline{\eta}_b \eta_c u_{ac} + 2\underline{\eta}_a \underline{\eta}_c u_{bc} + 2\underline{\eta}_b \underline{\eta}_c u_{ac} - 4{}^*\rho {}^*u_{ab} + Err_{43ab}[u] \\ &= 2\omega \nabla_3 u_{ab} - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla_4 u_{ab} + 2(\underline{\eta}_c - \eta_c)\nabla_c u_{ab} + 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes}(\underline{\eta} \cdot u) \\ &\quad - 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes}(\eta \cdot u) - 4{}^*\rho {}^*u_{ab} + Err_{43ab}[u], \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.24)$$

$$Err_{43ab}[u] = 2(\xi_a \xi_c - \xi_a \underline{\xi}_c)u^c{}_b + 2(\underline{\xi}_b \xi_c - \xi_b \underline{\xi}_c)u_a{}^c.$$

We deduce the following corollary.

Corollary 3.1.18. *The following commutation formulas hold true:*

1. Given $u \in \mathfrak{s}_1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} [\nabla_3, div]u &= -\frac{1}{2}tr\chi(div u - \eta \cdot u) + \frac{1}{2}{}^{(a)}tr\chi(div {}^*u - \eta \cdot {}^*u) + (\eta - \zeta) \cdot \nabla_3 u \\ &\quad + Err_{3div}[u], \\ Err_{3div}[u] &= -{}^*\beta \cdot {}^*u + \xi \cdot \nabla_4 u - \xi \cdot \widehat{\chi} \cdot u - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u - \eta \cdot \widehat{\chi} \cdot u, \\ [\nabla_4, div]u &= -\frac{1}{2}tr\chi(div u - \underline{\eta} \cdot u) + \frac{1}{2}{}^{(a)}tr\chi(div {}^*u - \underline{\eta} \cdot {}^*u) + (\underline{\eta} + \zeta) \cdot \nabla_4 u \\ &\quad + Err_{4div}[u], \\ Err_{4div}[u] &= {}^*\beta \cdot {}^*u + \xi \cdot \nabla_3 u - \xi \cdot \widehat{\chi} \cdot u - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u - \underline{\eta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} \cdot u. \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.25)$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_3, \nabla \hat{\otimes}]u &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} (\nabla \hat{\otimes} u + \underline{\eta} \hat{\otimes} u) - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^* (\nabla \hat{\otimes} u + \underline{\eta} \hat{\otimes} u) + (\eta - \zeta) \hat{\otimes} \nabla_3 u \\
&\quad + \text{Err}_{3\hat{\otimes}}[u], \\
\text{Err}_{3\hat{\otimes}}[u] &= - {}^* \underline{\beta} \hat{\otimes} {}^* u + \underline{\xi} \hat{\otimes} \nabla_4 u - \underline{\xi} \hat{\otimes} (\chi \cdot u) + \hat{\chi} (\underline{\xi} \cdot u) - \hat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u - \eta \hat{\otimes} (\hat{\chi} \cdot u) \\
&\quad + \hat{\chi} (\eta \cdot u),
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.26}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_4, \nabla \hat{\otimes}]u &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\nabla \hat{\otimes} u + \underline{\eta} \hat{\otimes} u) - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi {}^* (\nabla \hat{\otimes} u + \underline{\eta} \hat{\otimes} u) + (\underline{\eta} + \zeta) \hat{\otimes} \nabla_4 u \\
&\quad + \text{Err}_{4\hat{\otimes}}[u], \\
\text{Err}_{4\hat{\otimes}}[u] &= {}^* \beta \hat{\otimes} {}^* u + \xi \hat{\otimes} \nabla_3 u - \xi \hat{\otimes} (\underline{\chi} \cdot u) + \hat{\chi} (\xi \cdot u) - \hat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u - \underline{\eta} \hat{\otimes} (\hat{\chi} \cdot u) \\
&\quad + \hat{\chi} (\underline{\eta} \cdot u).
\end{aligned}$$

2. Given $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
[\nabla_3, \text{div}]u &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} (\text{div} u - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot u) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} (\text{div} {}^* u - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^* u) \\
&\quad + (\eta - \zeta) \cdot \nabla_3 u + \text{Err}_{3\text{div}}[u], \\
\text{Err}_{3\text{div}}[u] &= -2 {}^* \underline{\beta} \cdot {}^* u + \underline{\xi} \cdot \nabla_4 u - \underline{\xi} \cdot \chi \cdot u - (\chi \cdot u) \underline{\xi} + \underline{\xi} \cdot u \cdot \chi - \hat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u \\
&\quad - \eta \cdot \hat{\chi} \cdot u - (\hat{\chi} \cdot u) \eta + \eta \cdot u \cdot \hat{\chi}, \\
[\nabla_4, \text{div}]u &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi (\text{div} u - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot u) + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi (\text{div} {}^* u - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^* u) \\
&\quad + (\underline{\eta} + \zeta) \cdot \nabla_4 u + \text{Err}_{4\text{div}}[u], \\
\text{Err}_{4\text{div}}[u] &= 2 {}^* \beta \cdot {}^* u + \xi \cdot \nabla_3 u - \xi \cdot \underline{\chi} \cdot u - (\underline{\chi} \cdot u) \xi + \xi \cdot u \cdot \underline{\chi} - \hat{\chi} \cdot \nabla u \\
&\quad - \underline{\eta} \cdot \hat{\chi} \cdot u - (\hat{\chi} \cdot u) \underline{\eta} + \underline{\eta} \cdot u \cdot \hat{\chi}.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.27}$$

Proof. Straightforward. See also section 2.2.7 in [GKS-2022]. \square

3.1.11 Commutation formulas for conformal derivatives

Lemma 3.1.19. *Let $U_A = U_{a_1 \dots a_k}$ be a general k -horizontal tensorfield of signature s .*

1. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
[{}^{(c)} \nabla_3, {}^{(c)} \nabla_b]U_A &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} {}^{(c)} \nabla_c U_A + \eta_b {}^{(c)} \nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)} \nabla_4 U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}^c \\
&\quad - s(\underline{\chi} \cdot \eta - \chi \cdot \underline{\xi} + \underline{\beta})U_A
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.28}$$

2. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\chi_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_a + \underline{\eta}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_a + \xi_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_a + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 b} U_{a_1}{}^c \\ &\quad - s(\chi \cdot \eta - \underline{\chi} \cdot \xi - \beta)U_A \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.29)$$

3. We have

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U_A &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i b 4 3} U_{a_1}{}^b{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad - 2s(\rho - \eta \cdot \underline{\eta} + \xi \cdot \underline{\xi})U \end{aligned} \quad (3.1.30)$$

with the terms in $\dot{\mathbf{R}}$ given by formula 3.1.17.

Proof. We first deduce, using¹² the definition of conformal derivative, since $\text{sign}(U) = s$, $\text{sign}({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U) = s - 1$,

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A = [\nabla_3, \nabla_b]U_A + s(\nabla_3 \zeta_b + 2\nabla_b \underline{\omega})U_A + \zeta_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A \quad (3.1.31)$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} \nabla_c U_A + (\eta_b - \zeta_b) \nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b \nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad + \zeta_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + s(\nabla_3 \zeta_b + 2\nabla_b \underline{\omega})U_A \\ &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} ({}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A - s\zeta_c U_A) + (\eta_b - \zeta_b) ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + 2s\underline{\omega} U_A) \\ &\quad + \underline{\xi}_b ({}^{(c)}\nabla_4 - 2s\underline{\omega})U_A + s(\nabla_3 \zeta_b + 2\nabla_b \underline{\omega})U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \underline{\eta} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad + s\zeta_c \underline{\chi}_{bc} U_A + 2s\underline{\omega}(\eta - \zeta)_b U_A - 2s\underline{\omega} \underline{\xi}_b U_A + s(\nabla_3 \zeta_b + 2\nabla_b \underline{\omega})U_A. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \underline{\eta} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad + s(\nabla_3 \zeta_b + 2\nabla_b \underline{\omega} + 2\underline{\omega}(\eta - \zeta)_b - 2\underline{\omega} \underline{\xi}_b)U_A \end{aligned}$$

¹² Indeed on the commutator on the left

$$\begin{aligned} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 ({}^{(c)}\nabla U) - {}^{(c)}\nabla ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U) = \nabla_3 ({}^{(c)}\nabla U) - 2s\underline{\omega} ({}^{(c)}\nabla U) - (\nabla + (s-1)\zeta) ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U) \\ &= \nabla_3 (\nabla U + s\zeta U) - 2s\underline{\omega} (\nabla U + s\zeta U) - (\nabla + (s-1)\zeta) (\nabla_3 U - 2s\underline{\omega} U) \\ &= [\nabla_3, \nabla]U + s\nabla_3 (\zeta U) - 2\underline{\omega} \nabla U - s\zeta \nabla_3 U + 2s\nabla (\underline{\omega} U) + 2s\zeta \underline{\omega} U \\ &= [\nabla_3, \nabla]U + s(\nabla_3 \zeta + 2\nabla \underline{\omega})U + \zeta (\nabla_3 U - 2s\underline{\omega} U) \end{aligned}$$

In view of the null structure equation, see Proposition 3.1.4,

$$\nabla_3 \zeta + 2\nabla \underline{\omega} = -\underline{\chi} \cdot (\zeta + \eta) + 2\underline{\omega}(\zeta - \eta) + \chi \cdot \underline{\xi} + 2\underline{\omega}\underline{\xi} - \underline{\beta}$$

we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\underline{\chi}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \underline{\eta} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad + s(-\underline{\chi} \cdot (\zeta + \eta) + \chi \cdot \underline{\xi} - \underline{\beta})U_A \end{aligned}$$

as stated. The second formula can be deduced in the same manner.

To derive the last formula we first obtain from the definitions of ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_4$,

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U = [\nabla_4, \nabla_3]U - 2\underline{\omega} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U + 2\underline{\omega} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U - 2s(\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \underline{\omega})U.$$

Using the last commutator formula in Lemma 3.1.16 we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U_A &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b)\nabla_b U_A + 2\underline{\omega}\nabla_3 U_A - 2\underline{\omega}\nabla_4 U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 3} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad - 2\underline{\omega} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + 2\underline{\omega} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A - 2s(\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \underline{\omega})U_A \\ &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b)({}^{(c)}\nabla_b - s\underline{\zeta}_b)U_A - 2s(\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \underline{\omega} - 4\underline{\omega}\underline{\omega})U_A \\ &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b){}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A - 2s(\nabla_4 \underline{\omega} + \nabla_3 \omega - 4\underline{\omega}\underline{\omega} + (\underline{\eta} - \eta) \cdot \zeta)U_A \end{aligned}$$

Making us of the null structure equation, see Proposition 3.1.4,

$$\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \underline{\omega} - 4\underline{\omega}\underline{\omega} - (\eta - \underline{\eta}) \cdot \zeta = \rho - \eta \cdot \underline{\eta} + \xi \cdot \underline{\xi}.$$

Therefore

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U_A = 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b){}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A - 2s(\rho - \eta \cdot \underline{\eta} + \xi \cdot \underline{\xi})U_A + \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 3} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k}$$

as stated. □

3.1.12 Commutation formulas with horizontal Lie derivatives

Recall that the Lie derivative of a k -covariant tensor U relative to a vectorfield X is given by

$$\mathcal{L}_X(Y_1, \dots, Y_k) = XU(Y_1, \dots, Y_k) - U(\mathcal{L}_X Y_1, \dots, Y_k) - U(Y_1, \dots, \mathcal{L}_X Y_k),$$

where $\mathcal{L}_X Y = [X, Y]$. In components relative to an arbitrary frame

$$\mathcal{L}_X U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k} : = \mathbf{D}_X U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k} + \mathbf{D}_{\alpha_1} X^\beta U_{\beta \alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k} + \dots + \mathbf{D}_{\alpha_k} X^\beta U_{\alpha_1 \dots \beta}.$$

Recall also the general commutation Lemma, see chapter 7 in [Ch-Kl].

Lemma 3.1.20. *The following formula¹³ for a vectorfield X and a k -covariant tensorfield U holds true:*

$$\mathbf{D}_\beta(\mathcal{L}_X U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k}) - \mathcal{L}_X(\mathbf{D}_\beta U_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k}) = \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha_j \beta \rho} U_{\alpha_1 \dots \rho \dots \alpha_k}, \quad (3.1.32)$$

where

$${}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\mu} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{D}_\alpha {}^{(X)}\pi_{\beta\mu} + \mathbf{D}_\beta {}^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\mu} - \mathbf{D}_\mu {}^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta}). \quad (3.1.33)$$

The proof of the Lemma was given in [Ch-Kl], see Lemma 7.1.3, based on the following

Lemma 3.1.21. *Given an arbitrary vectorfield X we have the identity*

$$\mathbf{D}_\mu \mathbf{D}_\nu X_\beta = \mathbf{R}_{\beta\mu\nu\gamma} X^\gamma + {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\mu\nu\beta}.$$

Proof. Consider the tensor $A_{\mu\nu\beta} = \mathbf{D}_\mu \mathbf{D}_\nu X_\beta - \mathbf{R}_{\beta\mu\nu\gamma} X^\gamma - {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\mu\nu\beta}$ and observe that it verifies the symmetries

$$A_{\mu\nu\beta} = A_{\nu\mu\beta} = -A_{\mu\beta\nu}.$$

The proof of Lemma A.1.4 follows by observing that any such tensor must vanish identically¹⁴. \square

We are now ready to define the horizontal Lie derivative operator \mathcal{L} as follows.

Definition 3.1.22 (Horizontal Lie derivatives). *Given vectorfields X, Y , the horizontal Lie derivative $\mathcal{L}_X Y$ is given by*

$$\mathcal{L}_X Y := \mathcal{L}_X Y + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathcal{L}_X Y, e_3) e_4 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathcal{L}_X Y, e_4) e_3.$$

Given a horizontal covariant k -tensor U , the horizontal Lie derivative $\mathcal{L}_X U$ is defined to be the projection of $\mathcal{L}_X U$ to the horizontal space. Thus, for horizontal indices $A = a_1 \dots a_k$,

$$(\mathcal{L}_X U)_A := \nabla_X U_A + \mathbf{D}_{a_1} X^b U_{b \dots a_k} + \dots + \mathbf{D}_{a_k} X^b U_{a_1 \dots b}. \quad (3.1.34)$$

¹³This holds true for an arbitrary pseudo-riemannian space $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$.

¹⁴Indeed $A_{\mu\nu\beta} = -A_{\mu\beta\nu} = -A_{\beta\mu\nu} = A_{\beta\nu\mu} = A_{\nu\beta\mu} = -A_{\nu\mu\beta} = -A_{\mu\nu\beta}$.

Lemma 3.1.23. *The following commutation formulas hold true for a horizontal covariant k -tensor U and a vectorfield X*

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla_b(\mathcal{L}_X U_A) - \mathcal{L}_X(\nabla_b U_A) &= \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a_j bc} U_{a_1 \dots {}^c \dots a_k}, \\ \nabla_4(\mathcal{L}_X U_A) - \mathcal{L}_X(\nabla_4 U_A) + \nabla_{\mathcal{L}_X e_4} U_A &= \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a_j 4c} U_{a_1 \dots {}^c \dots a_k}, \\ \nabla_3(\mathcal{L}_X U_A) - \mathcal{L}_X(\nabla_3 U_A) + \nabla_{\mathcal{L}_X e_3} U_A &= \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a_j 3c} U_{a_1 \dots {}^c \dots a_k},\end{aligned}\tag{3.1.35}$$

with¹⁵

$$\begin{aligned}{}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{abc} &= \frac{1}{2}(\nabla_a {}^{(X)}\pi_{bc} + \nabla_b {}^{(X)}\pi_{ac} - \nabla_c {}^{(X)}\pi_{ab}), \\ {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a4b} &= \frac{1}{2}(\nabla_a {}^{(X)}\pi_{4b} + \nabla_4 {}^{(X)}\pi_{ab} - \nabla_b {}^{(X)}\pi_{a4}), \\ {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a3b} &= \frac{1}{2}(\nabla_a {}^{(X)}\pi_{3b} + \nabla_3 {}^{(X)}\pi_{ab} - \nabla_b {}^{(X)}\pi_{a3}).\end{aligned}\tag{3.1.36}$$

Proof. Follows easily by projecting formula (3.1.32) in Lemma 3.1.20, see also Lemma 9.1 in [Chr-BH]. \square

We now extend the definition of horizontal Lie derivative to any $U \in \mathbf{T}_k(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$.

Definition 3.1.24. *We define the general horizontal derivatives as follows.*

1. Given $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$ and a general, horizontal tensor-field $U \in \mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$, we define

$$\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X U := \mathcal{L}_X U.$$

2. Given a tensor in $U \in \mathbf{T}_k(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_l(\mathcal{M})$ and $X \in T(\mathcal{M})$ we define, for $Z = Z_1, \dots, Z_k \in O(\mathbf{M})$ and $Y = Y_1, \dots, Y_l \in \mathbf{O}_1(\mathcal{M})$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X U(Z, Y) &= XU(Z, Y) - U(\mathcal{L}_X Z_1, \dots, Z_k, Y) - \dots - U(Z_1, \dots, \mathcal{L}_X Z_k, Y) \\ &\quad - U(Z, \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X Y_1, \dots, Y_l) - \dots - U(Z, Y_1, \dots, \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X Y_l).\end{aligned}$$

¹⁵Here, ${}^{(X)}\pi_{ab}$ is treated as a horizontal symmetric 2-tensor, and ${}^{(X)}\pi_{a4}$, ${}^{(X)}\pi_{a3}$, as horizontal 1-forms.

3. We have

$$\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X(U \otimes V) = \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X U \otimes V + U \otimes \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X V.$$

4. The definition can be extended by duality to any mixed tensors in $\mathbf{T}_{k_2}^{k_1}(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_{l_2}^{l_1}(\mathcal{M})$.

Lemma 3.1.25. *The following commutation formulas hold true¹⁶ for $U \in \mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$ and $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$,*

$$\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu(\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X U_{a_1 \dots a_k}) - \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_{a_1 \dots a_k}) = \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a_j \mu c} U_{a_1 \dots \overset{c}{\dots} a_k}.$$

The following commutation formula holds true for $U \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M}) \otimes \mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$ and $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$,

$$\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu(\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X U_{\gamma a_1 \dots a_k}) - \dot{\mathcal{L}}_X(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu U_{\gamma a_1 \dots a_k}) = {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\gamma \mu \rho} U^\rho_{a_1 \dots \dots a_k} + \sum_{j=1}^k {}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}_{a_j \mu c} U_{\gamma a_1 \dots \overset{c}{\dots} a_k}.$$

Proof. Follows easily by projecting formula (3.1.32) in Lemma 3.1.20, see also Lemma 9.1 in [Chr-BH]. \square

3.2 Wave operators

Consider a spacetime $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$ with a horizontal structure induced by a null pair (e_3, e_4) .

Definition 3.2.1. *We define the wave operator for tensor-fields $\psi \in \mathbf{O}_k(\mathcal{M})$ to be*

$$\dot{\square}_k \psi := \mathbf{g}^{\mu\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi. \quad (3.2.1)$$

3.2.1 Commutation with $\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X$ and $\dot{\mathbf{D}}_X$

Recalling the definition of ${}^{(X)}\Gamma$, ${}^{(X)}\mathbb{F}$ in section 3.1.12 we have:

¹⁶With \mathbb{F}_X defined in (3.1.36).

Proposition 3.2.2. *The following commutation formula¹⁷ holds true for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ and $X \in \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{M})$,*

$$\begin{aligned} [\dot{\mathcal{L}}_X, \dot{\square}_2] \psi_{ab} = & - {}^{(X)}\pi^{\mu\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi_{ab} - {}^{(X)}\Gamma^\mu_{\mu\rho} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\rho \psi_{ab} - 2 {}^{(X)}\Upsilon_{a\mu c} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\mu \psi^c_b - 2 {}^{(X)}\Upsilon_{b\mu c} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\mu \psi^c_a \\ & - \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu ({}^{(X)}\Upsilon_{a\nu c}) \psi^c_b - \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu ({}^{(X)}\Upsilon_{b\nu c}) \psi^c_a. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. See proof of Proposition 2.3.2 in [GKS-2022]. \square

Lemma 3.2.3. *We have in a vacuum spacetime*

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}(X^\beta \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\beta U_a) - X^\beta \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\beta \dot{\square} U_a = & \pi^{\mu\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu U_a + (\mathbf{D}^\mu \pi_\mu{}^\beta - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}^\beta \text{tr} \pi) \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\beta U_a \\ & - 2X^\beta \mathbf{R}_{ac\beta\mu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\mu U_c + \mathbf{D}^\beta X^\mu \mathbf{R}_{ac\beta\mu} U^c \\ & - X^\beta \mathbf{B}_{ac\beta\mu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\mu U_c + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}^\beta X^\mu \mathbf{B}_{ac\beta\mu} U^c + \frac{1}{2} X^\beta \mathbf{D}^\mu \mathbf{B}_{ac\mu\beta} U^c. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation using Lemma A.1.4 and Proposition 3.0.22. See Lemma 2.3.3 in [GKS-2022]. \square

3.2.2 Killing tensor and commutation with second order operators

Recall that the deformation tensor of a vectorfield ${}^{(X)}\pi$ is defined as

$${}^{(X)}\pi_{\mu\nu} := \mathbf{D}_{(\mu} X_{\nu)} = \mathbf{D}_\mu X_\nu + \mathbf{D}_\nu X_\mu.$$

The vectorfield is said to be Killing if ${}^{(X)}\pi \equiv 0$. The Kerr spacetime has, in addition to the symmetries generated by its two linearly independent Killing vectorfields \mathbf{T} and \mathbf{Z} , a higher order symmetry defined by a Killing tensor.

Definition 3.2.4. *A symmetric 2-tensor $K_{\mu\nu}$ is said to be a Killing tensor if its deformation 3-tensor Π , defined below, vanishes identically.*

$$\Pi_{\mu\nu\rho} := \mathbf{D}_{(\mu} K_{\nu\rho)} = \mathbf{D}_\mu K_{\nu\rho} + \mathbf{D}_\nu K_{\rho\mu} + \mathbf{D}_\rho K_{\mu\nu}. \quad (3.2.2)$$

Remark 3.2.5. *Observe that if X, Y are Killing vectorfields then the symmetric 2-tensor $K = \frac{1}{2}(X \otimes Y + Y \otimes X)$ is a Killing tensor.*

We define the second order differential operator associated to a tensor-field $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$.

¹⁷Recall that $\dot{\mathcal{L}}$ has been introduced in Definition 3.1.24.

Definition 3.2.6. Given a symmetric tensor K its associated second order differential operator \mathcal{K} applied to a tensor $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ is defined as

$$\mathcal{K}(\psi) = \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu (K^{\mu\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu(\psi)). \quad (3.2.3)$$

We now compute the commutators of \mathcal{K} with $\square_{\mathbf{g}}$ in terms of the symmetric tensor Π .

Proposition 3.2.7. In a vacuum spacetime, the commutator between the differential operator \mathcal{K} and the $\square_{\mathbf{g}}$ operator applied to a scalar function ϕ is given by

$$[\mathcal{K}, \square_{\mathbf{g}}]\phi = \text{Err}[\Pi](\phi)$$

where $\text{Err}[\Pi](\phi)$ denotes terms involving Π given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Err}[\Pi](\phi) := & \mathbf{D}^\mu \left((\mathbf{D}^\alpha \Pi_{\alpha\nu\mu} - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\mu \Pi^\alpha_{\alpha\nu} + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\nu \Pi^\alpha_{\alpha\mu}) \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \phi - 2 \Pi_{\mu\alpha\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\alpha \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \phi \right) \\ & - 2 (\mathbf{D}^\alpha \Pi_{\alpha\nu\mu}) \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \phi. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. See the proof of Proposition 2.3.7 in [GKS-2022]. \square

3.2.3 A class of spin-k wave operators with potential

The following class of *spin-k* wave operators play a very important role in our analysis.

$$\dot{\square}_k \psi - V\psi = N, \quad (3.2.4)$$

where $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ and V is a real potential. The equation is variational with Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}[\psi] = \mathbf{g}^{\mu\nu} \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi + V\psi \cdot \psi.$$

where the dot product here denotes full contraction with respect to the horizontal indices.

The corresponding energy-momentum tensor associated to (3.2.4) is given by

$$\mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu} := \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}_{\mu\nu} \left(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\lambda \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\lambda \psi + V\psi \cdot \psi \right) = \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}_{\mu\nu} \mathcal{L}[\psi]. \quad (3.2.5)$$

Lemma 3.2.8. Given a solution $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ of equation (3.2.4) we have

$$\mathbf{D}^\nu \mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu} = \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot (\dot{\square}_k \psi - V\psi) + \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi^A \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{AB\nu\mu} \psi^B - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\mu V |\psi|^2.$$

Proof. We have, making us of Proposition 3.0.22

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^\nu \mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu} &= \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi + \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi \cdot \left(\dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu - \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \right) \psi - V \mathbf{D}_\mu \psi \cdot \psi - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\mu V \psi \cdot \psi \\
&= \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\nu \psi + \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi^a \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\nu\mu} \psi^b - V \mathbf{D}_\mu \psi \cdot \psi - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\mu V \psi \cdot \psi \\
&= \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi \cdot (\dot{\square}_k \psi - V \psi) + \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi^a \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\nu\mu} \psi^b - \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\mu V |\psi|^2.
\end{aligned}$$

□

Proposition 3.2.9. *[Standard calculation for generalized currents] Let $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ be a solution of (3.2.4) and X be a vectorfield. Then,*

1. The 1-form $\mathcal{P}_\mu = \mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu} X^\nu$ verifies

$$\mathbf{D}^\mu \mathcal{P}_\mu = \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{Q} \cdot {}^{(X)}\pi + X(\psi) \cdot (\dot{\square}_k \psi - V \psi) - \frac{1}{2} X(V) |\psi|^2 + X^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi^a \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\nu\mu} \psi^b.$$

2. Let X as above, w a scalar and M a one form. Define

$$\mathcal{P}_\mu[X, w, M] := \mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu} X^\nu + \frac{1}{2} w \psi \cdot \dot{\mathbf{D}}_\mu \psi - \frac{1}{4} |\psi|^2 \partial_\mu w + \frac{1}{4} |\psi|^2 M_\mu.$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{D}^\mu \mathcal{P}_\mu[X, w, M] &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{Q} \cdot {}^{(X)}\pi - \frac{1}{2} X(V) |\psi|^2 + \frac{1}{2} w \mathcal{L}[\psi] - \frac{1}{4} |\psi|^2 \square_{\mathbf{g}} w + \frac{1}{4} \text{Div}(|\psi|^2 M) \\
&\quad + X^\mu \dot{\mathbf{D}}^\nu \psi^a \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{ab\nu\mu} \psi^b + \left(X(\psi) + \frac{1}{2} w \psi \right) \cdot (\dot{\square}_k \psi - V \psi).
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Immediate verification. See also the proof of Proposition 4.7.2 in [GKS-2022]. □

3.2.4 Decomposition of $\dot{\square}_k$ in null frames

Lemma 3.2.10. *The wave operator for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k$ is given by*

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{\square}_k \psi &= -\frac{1}{2} (\nabla_3 \nabla_4 \psi + \nabla_4 \nabla_3 \psi) + \left(\underline{\omega} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \right) \nabla_4 \psi + \left(\omega - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \right) \nabla_3 \psi \\
&\quad + \triangle_k \psi + (\eta + \underline{\eta}) \cdot \nabla \psi,
\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.6}$$

where $\Delta = \nabla^a \nabla_a$ denotes the horizontal Laplacian for k -tensors. Moreover If ψ is also 0-conformal invariant we also have

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}_k \psi = & -\frac{1}{2} \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \psi + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi \right) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \psi - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi \\ & + \Delta_k^c \psi + (\eta + \underline{\eta}) \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla \psi, \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.7)$$

Proof. See the proof of Lemma 4.7.4 in [GKS-2022] for the first part. The second part follows then easily from first and the definition of the conformal derivatives. \square

Corollary 3.2.11. *The wave operator for 0-conformally invariant $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k(\mathbb{C})$ is given by the formula (with $A = a_1 \dots a_k$.)*

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}_k \psi_A = & - {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi_A - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \psi_A - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi_A + {}^{(c)}\Delta_2 \psi_A + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla \psi_A \\ & + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 43} \psi_{a_1 \dots a_k}^c \end{aligned} \quad (3.2.8)$$

Proof. It follows easily from the commutator formula for $[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]$ of 3.1.19 applied to signature $s = 0$. \square

3.3 Integrable S -foliations

We consider the case of a given foliation of our spacetime by compact two dimensional surfaces S . At every point p of a given S surface we take e_3, e_4 to be orthogonal to S . We are thus in a situation when our horizontal structure is integrable, i.e. ${}^{(a)}\text{tr} \chi = {}^{(a)}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} = 0$. Thus, in this case the second fundamental forms $\chi, \underline{\chi}$ are symmetric. The null structure and Bianchi equations simplify considerably.

Proposition 3.3.1. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} &= -|\widehat{\underline{\chi}}|^2 - \text{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div} \underline{\xi} + 2 \underline{\xi} \cdot (\eta + \underline{\eta}), \\ 0 &= 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl} \underline{\xi} + 2 \underline{\xi} \wedge (-\eta + \underline{\eta}), \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\underline{\xi}} + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} (\eta + \underline{\eta}) - \underline{\alpha}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr } \chi &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \chi + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div } \eta + 2(\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\eta|^2) + 2\rho, \\
0 &= 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \eta - \widehat{\chi} \wedge \widehat{\chi} + 2\underline{\xi} \wedge \xi - 2 {}^*\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\chi} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} + \text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi}) + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \eta + \underline{\xi} \widehat{\otimes} \xi + \eta \widehat{\otimes} \eta, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \chi &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \chi + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\eta} + 2(\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} + |\underline{\eta}|^2) + 2\rho, \\
0 &= 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\eta} - \widehat{\chi} \wedge \widehat{\chi} + 2\underline{\xi} \wedge \xi + 2 {}^*\rho, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} &= -\frac{1}{2}(\text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} + \text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi}) + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta} + \xi \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} + \underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \chi &= -|\widehat{\chi}|^2 - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi^2 + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div } \xi + 2\xi \cdot (\underline{\eta} + \eta), \\
0 &= 2 {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \xi - \text{tr } \chi {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi + 2\xi \wedge (-\underline{\eta} + \eta), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} &= -\text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi + \xi \widehat{\otimes} (\underline{\eta} + \eta) - \alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\eta} - {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\xi} &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\underline{\eta} - \eta) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi (\underline{\eta} - \eta) + \underline{\beta}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \eta - {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \xi &= -\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\eta - \underline{\eta}) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi (\eta - \underline{\eta}) - \beta. \\
{}^{(c)}\text{div } \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla (\text{tr } \chi) - \beta, \\
{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\widehat{\chi}} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla (\text{tr } \chi) + \underline{\beta}.
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition 3.3.2. *The Bianchi equations take the form*

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha - {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \alpha + 4\eta \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^*\rho {}^*\widehat{\chi}), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \beta - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha &= -2 \text{tr } \chi \beta + \alpha \cdot \underline{\eta} + 3(\xi \rho + {}^*\xi {}^*\rho), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \beta + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \varrho &= -\text{tr } \chi \beta + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^*\rho {}^*\eta) + \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \rho - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2} \text{tr } \chi \rho + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \beta - 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2} \text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^*\beta - 2\xi \cdot {}^*\beta + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^*\alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \rho + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2} \text{tr } \chi \rho - 2\eta \cdot \underline{\beta} + 2\underline{\xi} \cdot \beta - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot \underline{\alpha}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2} \text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho - 2\eta \cdot {}^*\beta - 2\underline{\xi} \cdot {}^*\beta - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^*\underline{\alpha}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\beta} - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \check{\varrho} &= -\text{tr } \chi \underline{\beta} + 2\beta \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \underline{\eta} - {}^*\rho {}^*\underline{\eta}) - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \xi,
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\beta} + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\alpha} &= -2\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \underline{\beta} - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \eta - 3(\underline{\xi} \rho - {}^*\underline{\xi} {}^*\rho), \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\alpha} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \underline{\alpha} - 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3(\rho \underline{\chi} - {}^*\rho {}^*\underline{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

3.3.1 Diez operators

Definition 3.3.3. Define the rank of an horizontal tensor ψ to be the negative of its scale. Thus curvature components α, β, \dots have scale -2 and rank $k = 2$ while Ricci coefficients have scale -1 and rank $k = 1$. Note that the scale of the metric is 0 and its derivative of it lowers the scale by 1 .

Definition 3.3.4. If f is a horizontal tensor of signature s and scale k we define

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3^\# \psi &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \psi \\
\nabla_4^\# \psi &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \psi + \frac{1}{2}(1 + s + k)\text{tr } \chi \psi
\end{aligned} \tag{3.3.1}$$

Remark 3.3.5. According to this definition

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 2 + 2)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \alpha \\
\nabla_4^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 2 + 2)\text{tr } \chi \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + \text{tr } \chi \alpha \\
\nabla_3^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \beta + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 1 + 2)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \beta = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \beta + \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \beta \\
\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \beta + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 1 + 2)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \beta = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \beta + 2\text{tr } \chi \beta \\
\nabla_3^\# \rho &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \rho + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 0 + 2)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \rho + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho \\
\nabla_4^\# \rho &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \rho + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 0 + 2)\text{tr } \chi \rho = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \rho + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \chi \rho \\
\nabla_3^\# {}^*\rho &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^*\rho + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 0 + 2)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\rho = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^*\rho + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\rho \\
\nabla_4^\# {}^*\rho &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^*\rho + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 0 + 2)\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^*\rho + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho
\end{aligned}$$

Also, since $\nabla_3^\# \alpha$ has signature $s = 1$ and rank $k = 3$

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3^\# \nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(\nabla_3^\# \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 1 + 3)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(\nabla_3^\# \alpha) + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_3^\# \alpha \\
\nabla_4^\# \nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(\nabla_3^\# \alpha) + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 1 + 3)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(\nabla_3^\# \alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_3^\# \alpha
\end{aligned}$$

and similarly for all other second and higher derivatives.

Thus Proposition 3.3.2 takes the form

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta + 4\eta \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}), \\
\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + \alpha \cdot \underline{\eta} + 3(\xi \rho + {}^* \xi {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_3^\# \beta &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \varrho + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) + \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
\nabla_4^\# \rho &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \beta + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \underline{\beta} - 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot \alpha, \\
\nabla_4^\# {}^* \rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{curl } \beta - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^* \beta - 2\xi \cdot {}^* \beta + \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^* \alpha, \\
\nabla_3^\# \rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\beta} - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \underline{\beta} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot \alpha, \\
\nabla_3^\# {}^* \rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\beta} - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot {}^* \underline{\beta} - 2\xi \cdot {}^* \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot {}^* \alpha, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\beta} &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \check{\varrho} + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \eta - {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) - \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
\nabla_3^\# \underline{\beta} &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\alpha} - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \eta - 3(\underline{\xi} \rho - {}^* \underline{\xi} {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_4^\# \underline{\alpha} &= -{}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} - {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

Using the definition of the Hodge operators, see Lemma 3.0.33 and recalling the formulas $-\text{div } \varrho = (\nabla \rho + {}^* \nabla {}^* \rho) = \mathcal{P}_1^*(-\rho, {}^* \rho)$ and $-\text{div } \check{\varrho} = (\nabla \rho - {}^* \nabla {}^* \rho) = -\mathcal{P}_1^*(\rho, {}^* \rho)$, see (3.1.12), we deduce

Proposition 3.3.6. *The Bianchi equations take the form*

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= 2\mathcal{P}_2^* \beta + 4\eta \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} + {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}), \\
\nabla_4^\# \beta &= \mathcal{P}_2 \alpha + \alpha \cdot \underline{\eta} + 3(\xi \rho + {}^* \xi {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_3^\# \beta &= \mathcal{P}_1^*(-\rho, {}^* \rho) - \text{tr } \chi \beta + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 3(\rho \eta + {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) + \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
\nabla_4^\# (-\rho, {}^* \rho) &= -\mathcal{P}_1 \beta - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot (\beta, {}^* \underline{\beta}) + 2\xi \cdot (\underline{\beta}, -{}^* \underline{\beta}) + \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\alpha, {}^* \alpha), \\
\nabla_3^\# (\rho, {}^* \rho) &= -\mathcal{P}_1 \underline{\beta} - 2\underline{\eta} \cdot (\underline{\beta}, {}^* \underline{\beta}) + 2\xi \cdot (\underline{\beta}, -{}^* \underline{\beta}) - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi} \cdot (\alpha, {}^* \alpha) \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\beta} &= \mathcal{P}_1^*(\rho, {}^* \rho) + 2\underline{\beta} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 3(\rho \eta - {}^* \rho {}^* \eta) - \alpha \cdot \underline{\xi}, \\
\nabla_3^\# \underline{\beta} &= -\mathcal{P}_2 \underline{\alpha} - \underline{\alpha} \cdot \eta - 3(\underline{\xi} \rho - {}^* \underline{\xi} {}^* \rho), \\
\nabla_4^\# \underline{\alpha} &= 2\mathcal{P}_2^* \underline{\beta} - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \underline{\alpha} - 4\underline{\eta} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3(\rho \widehat{\chi} - {}^* \rho {}^* \widehat{\chi}).
\end{aligned}$$

Remark 3.3.7. *The division in Bianchi pairs is important as we shall see later.*

3.3.2 Commutator formulas for the diez operators

Lemma 3.3.8 (Commutator Formulas). *Given U of signature s and rank k we have*

1. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \eta_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1} {}^c_{a_k} \\ &\quad - s(\underline{\chi} \cdot \eta - \chi \cdot \underline{\xi} + \underline{\beta})U_A - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\nabla \text{tr} \underline{\chi} U_A \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.2)$$

2. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U_A &= -\widehat{\chi}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \underline{\eta}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \xi_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 4 b} U_{a_1} {}^c_{a_k} \\ &\quad - s(\chi \cdot \eta - \underline{\chi} \cdot \xi - \beta)U_A - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\nabla \text{tr} \chi U_A \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.3)$$

3. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#]U_A &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i b 4 3} U_{a_1} {}^b_{a_k} - s\left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi - 2\eta \cdot \underline{\eta}\right) \\ &\quad + s(\widehat{\underline{\chi}} \cdot \widehat{\chi} - 4\xi \cdot \underline{\xi})U \\ &\quad + \left((1 - s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div} \underline{\eta} + |\underline{\eta}|^2) - (1 + s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div} \eta + |\eta|^2)\right)U \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.4)$$

Proof. Since U has rank k and signature s , ∇U has signature s and rank $k + 1$, ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# U$ has signature $s - 1$ and rank $k + 1$ and ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# U$ has signature $s + 1$ and rank $k + 1$. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# ({}^{(c)}\nabla_b U) - {}^{(c)}\nabla_b ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# U) \\ &= \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k + 1)\text{tr} \underline{\chi}\right) {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U - {}^{(c)}\nabla_b \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U + \text{tr} \underline{\chi} U\right) \\ &= [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k + 1)\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\nabla \text{tr} \underline{\chi} U \\ &= [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr} \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\nabla \text{tr} \underline{\chi} U \end{aligned}$$

Hence, in view of Lemma 3.1.19 and ${}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi = 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U &= -\widehat{\underline{\chi}}_{bc} {}^{(c)}\nabla_c U_A + \eta_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 U_A + \underline{\xi}_b {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i c 3 b} U_{a_1}{}^c{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad - s(\underline{\chi} \cdot \eta - \chi \cdot \underline{\xi} + \beta)U_A - \frac{1}{2}(1 - s + k)\nabla \text{tr}\chi U \end{aligned}$$

as stated. The commutator formula for $[{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_b]U$ is derived in the same manner.

Using the definitions of ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#$ we deduce

$$\left[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \right] U = [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U - \frac{1}{2} \left((1 + s + k)({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr}\chi) - (1 - s + k)({}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr}\chi) \right) U$$

In view of the null structure equations, see Proposition 3.1.14, since ${}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi = {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi = 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr}\chi &= 2\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi \text{tr}\chi + 2({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr}\chi &= 2\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi \text{tr}\chi + 2({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} \end{aligned}$$

we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} \left[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \right] U &= [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3]U - s \left(2\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi \text{tr}\chi - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} \right) U \\ &\quad + (1 - s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) - (1 + s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) \\ &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i b 4 3} U_{a_1}{}^b{}_{a_k} - s(2\rho - 2\eta \cdot \underline{\eta} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\xi})U \\ &\quad - s \left(2\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi \text{tr}\chi - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 2\xi \cdot \underline{\xi} \right) \\ &\quad + (1 - s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) - (1 + s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) \\ &= 2(\underline{\eta}_b - \eta_b) {}^{(c)}\nabla_b U_A + \sum_{i=1}^k \dot{\mathbf{R}}_{a_i b 4 3} U_{a_1}{}^b{}_{a_k} \\ &\quad - s(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi \text{tr}\chi - 2\eta \cdot \underline{\eta} - \widehat{\chi} \cdot \widehat{\chi} + 4\xi \cdot \underline{\xi})U \\ &\quad + \left((1 - s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) - (1 + s + k)({}^{(c)}\text{div}\eta + |\eta|^2) \right) U \end{aligned}$$

as stated. □

The commutation formulas with the diez operators become particularly simple in the case of linear perturbations around Schwarzschild when $\widehat{\chi}, \widehat{\underline{\chi}}, \eta, \underline{\eta}, \xi, \underline{\xi}, \beta, \underline{\beta}, {}^*\rho$ are all linear quantities, i.e. they all vanish in Kerr.

Corollary 3.3.9. *For linearized perturbations near Schwarzschild we have, for any linear, horizontal, tensorfield U of signature s ,*

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla]U = [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla]U = 0.$$

and

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#]U = -s(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi)U$$

Leibnitz rule for the diez operators

Lemma 3.3.10. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_2 - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \psi_2 - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.5)$$

Also

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 + \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_3 \\ &\quad - \text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 + \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \psi_3 \\ &\quad - \text{tr}\chi\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3 \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.6)$$

Proof. Assume $\text{sign}(\psi_i) = s_i$, $\text{rank}(\psi_i) = k_i$. Note that $\text{sign}(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) = s_1 + s_2$ and $\text{rank}(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) = k_1 + k_2$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} & {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2) + \frac{1}{2}(1 - (s_2 + s_2) + (k_1 + k_2))\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi_2 + \frac{1}{2}(1 - (s_2 + s_2) + (k_1 + k_2))\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \\ &= ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi_1 + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s_1 + k_1)\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1) \cdot \psi_2 + \psi_1 \cdot ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi_2 + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s_2 + k_2)\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_2) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 + \psi_1 \cdot {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_2 - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \end{aligned}$$

The second identity in (3.3.5) follows in the same manner. Similarly, $\text{sign}(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) = s_1 + s_2 + s_3$ and $\text{rank}(\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) = k_1 + k_2 + k_3$. Hence

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \psi_i = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \psi_i + \frac{1}{2}(1 - s_i + k_i) \text{tr} \chi \psi_i$$

and

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 (\psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3) + \frac{1}{2}(1 - \sum s + \sum k) \text{tr} \chi \psi_1 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \psi_3$$

from which the result easily follows. □

3.3.3 Double null and geodesic foliations

Definition 3.3.11 (Double null). *An optical function u is a regular solution (i.e. $du \neq 0$), of the Eikonal equation*

$$\mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta} \partial_\alpha u \partial_\beta u = 0.$$

In that case $L = -\mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta} \partial_\beta u \partial_\alpha$ is null and geodesic, i.e. $\mathbf{D}_L L = 0$ and is called the null geodesic generators of the null hypersurfaces generated by the level surfaces of u .

Definition 3.3.12. *Consider a region $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}(u_*, \underline{u}_*)$ of a vacuum spacetime $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$ spanned by a double null foliation generated by the optical functions (u, \underline{u}) increasing towards the future, $0 \leq u \leq u_*$ and $0 \leq \underline{u} \leq \underline{u}_*$. We denote by H_u the outgoing null hypersurfaces generated by the level surfaces of u and by $\underline{H}_{\underline{u}}$ the incoming null hypersurfaces generated level hypersurfaces of \underline{u} . We write $S_{u, \underline{u}} = H_u \cap \underline{H}_{\underline{u}}$. Let L, \underline{L} be the geodesic vectorfields associated to the two foliations and define¹⁸,*

$$\frac{1}{2}\Omega^2 = -\mathbf{g}(L, \underline{L})^{-1} \tag{3.3.7}$$

The normalized symmetric null pair is defined by,

$$e_3 = \Omega \underline{L}, \quad e_4 = \Omega L, \quad \mathbf{g}(e_3, e_4) = -2$$

Given a 2-surfaces $S(u, \underline{u})$ and $(e_a)_{a=1,2}$ an arbitrary frame tangent to it we recall the Ricci coefficients,

$$\Gamma_{(\lambda)(\mu)(\nu)} = g(e_{(\lambda)}, \mathbf{D}_{e_{(\mu)}} e_{(\nu)}), \quad \lambda, \mu, \nu = 1, 2, 3, 4 \tag{3.3.8}$$

¹⁸Observe that the flat value of Ω is 1.

These coefficients are completely determined by the following components,

$$\begin{aligned}\chi_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_4, e_b), & \underline{\chi}_{ab} &= \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_3, e_b), \\ \eta_a &= -\frac{1}{2} g(\mathbf{D}_3 e_a, e_4), & \underline{\eta}_a &= -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_4 e_a, e_3) \\ \omega &= -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_4 e_3, e_4), & \underline{\omega} &= -\frac{1}{4} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_3 e_4, e_3), \\ \zeta_a &= \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{D}_a e_4, e_3)\end{aligned}\tag{3.3.9}$$

where $\mathbf{D}_a = \mathbf{D}_{e_{(a)}}$, $\mathbf{D}_3 = \mathbf{D}_{e_3}$, $\mathbf{D}_4 = \mathbf{D}_{e_4}$.

Lemma 3.3.13. *For a double null foliation we have,*

$$\begin{aligned}\omega &= -\frac{1}{2} \nabla_4(\log \Omega), & \underline{\omega} &= -\frac{1}{2} \nabla_3(\log \Omega), \\ \eta_a &= \zeta_a + \nabla_a(\log \Omega), & \underline{\eta}_a &= -\zeta_a + \nabla_a(\log \Omega)\end{aligned}\tag{3.3.10}$$

Proof. Straightforward verification. Compare also with the proof of Lemma 3.3.15 below. \square

For a more detailed exposition of double null foliations see¹⁹ [Kl-Ni1] and in [Chr-BH] in the context of Christodolou's famous result²⁰ on formation of trapped surfaces.

Definition 3.3.14 (Geodesic). *A geodesic foliations are given by the level surfaces of function (u, s) where u is an outgoing (or incoming) optical function u ,*

$$\mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta} \partial_\alpha u \partial_\beta u = g^{ab} \partial_a u \partial_b u = 0$$

and s verifies,

$$L(s) = 1, \quad L = -g^{ab} \partial_b u \partial_a.$$

We denote $S_{u,s}$ the 2-surfaces of intersection between the level surfaces of u and s . We then choose $e_4 = L$ and e_3 the unique null vectorfield orthogonal to $S_{u,s}$ and such that $g(e_3, e_4) = -2$. We also introduce

$$\underline{\Omega} := e_3(s).\tag{3.3.11}$$

¹⁹ [Kl-Ni1] contains a proof of the stability of the Minkowski space in the exterior of the domain of influence of a compact region. A modern version of the result can be found in [Shen:Mink-ext]

²⁰ See also [Kl-Rod2] and [An-Luk] for more recent versions of the result.

Lemma 3.3.15. *We have*

$$\omega = \xi = 0, \quad \eta = \zeta, \quad \underline{\eta} = -\zeta, \quad e_\theta(\underline{\Omega}) = -\underline{\xi}, \quad e_4(\underline{\Omega}) = -2\underline{\omega}. \quad (3.3.12)$$

Proof. Since e_4 is geodesic, we have $\omega = \xi = 0$. Next, note that

$$e_\theta(u) = e_\theta(s) = e_4(u) = 0$$

and

$$e_3(u) = g(e_3, -L) = -g(e_3, e_4) = 2, \quad e_4(s) = 1.$$

Applying the vectorfield

$$[e_3, e_a] = \underline{\xi}_a e_4 + (\eta - \zeta)_a e_3 - \underline{\chi}_{ab} e_b$$

to u we deduce $\eta = \zeta$. Applying then

$$[e_3, e_a] = \underline{\xi}_a e_4 - \underline{\chi}_{ab} e_b$$

to s we deduce $e_a(\underline{\Omega}) = -\underline{\xi}_a$. Applying

$$[e_4, e_a] = (\underline{\eta} + \zeta)_a e_4 - \chi_{ab} e_b$$

to s , we deduce that

$$0 = -e_s(e_4(s)) = (\underline{\eta} + \zeta)e_4(s) = \underline{\eta} + \zeta$$

and hence $\underline{\eta} + \zeta = 0$. Finally applying

$$[e_4, e_3] = -4\underline{\zeta}_a e_a - 2\underline{\omega} e_4$$

to s we infer $e_4(e_3(s)) = -2\underline{\omega}$, i.e. $e_4(\underline{\Omega}) = -2\underline{\omega}$ as desired. \square

3.3.4 Teukolski and Regge-Wheeler equations in the integrable case

3.4 Main equations in complex notations

In this section we introduce complex notations for the Ricci coefficients and the curvature components with the objective of simplifying the main equations. From the real scalars, 1-tensors and symmetric traceless 2-tensors already introduced, we define their complexified version which results in anti-self dual tensors.

3.4.1 Complex notations

Recall Definition 3.0.8 of the set of real horizontal k -tensors $\mathfrak{s}_k = \mathfrak{s}_k(\mathcal{M}, \mathbb{R})$ on \mathcal{M} . For instance,

- $(a, b) \in \mathfrak{s}_0$ is a pair of real scalar function on \mathcal{M} ,
- $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ is a real horizontal 1-tensor on \mathcal{M} ,
- $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$ is a real horizontal symmetric traceless 2-tensor on \mathcal{M} .

By Definition 3.0.9, the duals of real horizontal tensors are real horizontal tensors of the same type, i.e. $*f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$ and $*u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$.

We define the complexified version of horizontal tensors on \mathcal{M} .

Definition 3.4.1. *We denote by $\mathfrak{s}_k(\mathbb{C}) = \mathfrak{s}_k(\mathcal{M}, \mathbb{C})$ the set of complex anti-self dual k -tensors on \mathcal{M} . More precisely,*

- $a + ib \in \mathfrak{s}_0(\mathbb{C})$ is a complex scalar function on \mathcal{M} if $(a, b) \in \mathfrak{s}_0$,
- $F = f + i *f \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ is a complex anti-self dual 1-tensor on \mathcal{M} if $f \in \mathfrak{s}_1$,
- $U = u + i *u \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ is a complex anti-self dual symmetric traceless 2-tensor on \mathcal{M} if $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$.

Observe that $F \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ and $U \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ are indeed anti-self dual tensors, i.e.:

$$*F = -iF, \quad *U = -iU.$$

More precisely

$$U_{12} = U_{21} = i *U_{12} = i \epsilon_{12} U_{22} = -iU_{11}, \quad U_{11} = iU_{12}.$$

Recall that the derivatives ∇_3 , ∇_4 and ∇_a are real derivatives. We can use the dual operators to define the complexified version of the ∇_a derivative, which allows to simplify the notations in the main equations.

Definition 3.4.2. *We define the complexified version of the horizontal derivative as*

$$\mathcal{D} = \nabla + i * \nabla, \quad \overline{\mathcal{D}} = \nabla - i * \nabla.$$

More precisely, we have

- for $a + ib \in \mathfrak{s}_0(\mathbb{C})$,

$$\mathcal{D}(a + ib) := (\nabla + i^* \nabla)(a + ib), \quad \overline{\mathcal{D}}(a + ib) := (\nabla - i^* \nabla)(a + ib).$$

- For $f + i^* f \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D} \cdot (f + i^* f) &:= (\nabla + i^* \nabla) \cdot (f + i^* f) = 0, \\ \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (f + i^* f) &:= (\nabla - i^* \nabla) \cdot (f + i^* f), \\ \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} (f + i^* f) &:= (\nabla + i^* \nabla) \hat{\otimes} (f + i^* f). \end{aligned}$$

- For $u + i^* u \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D} \cdot (u + i^* u) &:= (\nabla + i^* \nabla) \cdot (u + i^* u) = 0 \\ \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (u + i^* u) &:= (\nabla - i^* \nabla) \cdot (u + i^* u). \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$^* \mathcal{D} = -i \mathcal{D}.$$

For $F = f + i^* f \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ the operator $-\frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes}$ is formally adjoint to the operator $\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot U$ applied to $U \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$. For $h = a + ib \in \mathfrak{s}_0(\mathbb{C})$ the operator $-\mathcal{D}h$ is formally adjoint to the operator $\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot F$ applied to $F \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$. These notions makes sense literally only if the horizontal structure is integrable.

Lemma 3.4.3. *For $F = f + i^* f \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ and $U = u + i^* u \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$, we have*

$$(\mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} F) \cdot \overline{U} = -2F \cdot (\mathcal{D} \cdot \overline{U}) - ((H + \underline{H}) \hat{\otimes} F) \cdot \overline{U} + 2\mathcal{D} \cdot (F \cdot \overline{U}). \quad (3.4.1)$$

Proof. We look at the real parts. Then

$$(\nabla \hat{\otimes} f) \cdot u = (\nabla_a f_b + \nabla_b f_a - \delta_{ab} \operatorname{div} f) u_{ab} = 2(\nabla_a f_b) u_{ab} = 2\nabla_a (u_{ab} f_b) - 2(\operatorname{div} u) \cdot f$$

Using Lemma 3.0.41 applied to $\xi = u \cdot f$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla \hat{\otimes} f) \cdot u &= 2\nabla^a (u_{ab} f_b) - 2(\eta + \underline{\eta}) \cdot (u \cdot f) - 2(\operatorname{div} u) \cdot f \\ &= -2(\operatorname{div} u) \cdot f - ((\eta + \underline{\eta}) \hat{\otimes} f) \cdot u + 2\operatorname{div} (u \cdot f) \end{aligned}$$

By complexifying, we obtain the stated identity. \square

Lemma 3.4.4. *The following holds.*

- If $\xi, \eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1$

$$\begin{aligned}\xi \cdot \eta + i^* \xi \cdot \eta &= \frac{1}{2} \left((\xi + i^* \xi) \cdot (\overline{\eta + i^* \eta}) \right), \\ \xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta + i^* (\xi \widehat{\otimes} \eta) &= \frac{1}{2} \left((\xi + i^* \xi) \widehat{\otimes} (\eta + i^* \eta) \right).\end{aligned}$$

- If $\eta \in \mathfrak{s}_1, u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$

$$\begin{aligned}u \cdot \eta + i^* u \cdot \eta &= \frac{1}{2} (u + i^* u) \cdot (\overline{\eta + i^* \eta}), \\ u \cdot \eta + i^* (u \cdot \eta) &= \frac{1}{2} (u + i^* u) \cdot (\overline{\eta + i^* \eta}).\end{aligned}$$

- If $u, v \in \mathfrak{s}_2$

$$u \cdot v + i^* u \cdot v = \frac{1}{2} (u + i^* u) \cdot (\overline{v + i^* v}).$$

- If $(a, b) \in \mathfrak{s}_0$

$$\nabla a - {}^* \nabla b + i({}^* \nabla a + \nabla b) = \mathcal{D}(a + ib).$$

- If $\xi \in \mathfrak{s}_1$

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{div} \xi + i \operatorname{curl} \xi &= \frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (\xi + i^* \xi) \\ \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi + i^* (\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi) &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} (\xi + i^* \xi).\end{aligned}$$

- If $u \in \mathfrak{s}_2$

$$\operatorname{div} u + i^* (\operatorname{div} u) = \frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (u + i^* u).$$

Proof. Straightforward verification. □

Lemma 3.4.5. *Let $E, F \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ and $U \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$. Then*

$$E \widehat{\otimes} (\overline{F} \cdot U) + F \widehat{\otimes} (\overline{E} \cdot U) = 2(E \cdot \overline{F} + \overline{E} \cdot F) U. \quad (3.4.2)$$

Proof. See proof of Lemma 2.4.5 in [GKS-2022]. □

Leibniz formulas

We collect here Leibniz formulas involving the derivative operators defined above.

Lemma 3.4.6. *Let h be a scalar function, $F \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$, $U \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$. Then*

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (hF) &= h\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot F + \overline{\mathcal{D}}(h) \cdot F, \\ \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} (hF) &= h\mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} F + \mathcal{D}(h) \hat{\otimes} F, \\ \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot (hU) &= \overline{\mathcal{D}}(h) \cdot U + h(\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot U), \\ \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} (\overline{F} \cdot U) &= 2(\mathcal{D} \cdot \overline{F})U + 2(\overline{F} \cdot \mathcal{D})U, \\ U \cdot \overline{\mathcal{D}}F &= U(\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot F).\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.3}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}F \hat{\otimes} (\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot U) &= 2(F \cdot \overline{\mathcal{D}})U = 4F \cdot \nabla U, \\ (F \cdot \overline{\mathcal{D}})U + (\overline{F} \cdot \mathcal{D})U &= 4f \cdot \nabla U = 2(F + \overline{F}) \cdot \nabla U.\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.4}$$

Proof. Straightforward verifications, see section ??.

□

Lemma 3.4.7. *As a corollary of (3.4.4) we derive the following formula for $U \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$*

$$\mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} (\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot U) = 2\Delta_2 U - 4 {}^{(h)}KU - i({}^{(a)}tr\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} \nabla_4)U \tag{3.4.5}$$

where

$${}^{(h)}K = -\frac{1}{4}tr\chi tr\underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{4} {}^{(a)}tr\chi {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{\chi} \cdot \hat{\underline{\chi}} - \frac{1}{4}\rho.$$

Proof. See proof of Lemma 2.4.7 in [GKS-2022].

□

3.4.2 Main equations in complex form

We now extend the definitions for the Ricci coefficients and curvature components given in Sections 3.1.1 and 3.1.2, to the complex case by using the anti-self dual tensors defined above.

Definition 3.4.8. *We define the following complex anti-self dual tensors:*

$$A := \alpha + i {}^*\alpha, \quad B := \beta + i {}^*\beta, \quad P := \rho + i {}^*\rho, \quad \underline{B} := \underline{\beta} + i {}^*\underline{\beta}, \quad \underline{A} := \underline{\alpha} + i {}^*\underline{\alpha},$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \chi + i^* \chi, & \underline{X} &= \underline{\chi} + i^* \underline{\chi}, & H &= \eta + i^* \eta, & \underline{H} &= \underline{\eta} + i^* \underline{\eta}, & Z &= \zeta + i^* \zeta, \\ \Xi &= \xi + i^* \xi, & \underline{\Xi} &= \underline{\xi} + i^* \underline{\xi}. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, note that

$$\text{tr} X = \text{tr} \chi - i^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi, \quad \widehat{X} = \widehat{\chi} + i^* \widehat{\chi}, \quad \text{tr} \underline{X} = \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - i^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi}, \quad \widehat{\underline{X}} = \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + i^* \widehat{\underline{\chi}}.$$

Remark 3.4.9. The pairing relations described in section 3.1.3 imply the following transformation rules with respect to the interchange of $L = e_4$, $\underline{L} = e_3$

$$\begin{aligned} A &\leftrightarrow \overline{A}, & B &\leftrightarrow -\overline{B}, & P &\leftrightarrow P, & \text{tr} X &\leftrightarrow \overline{\text{tr} X}, & \widehat{X} &\leftrightarrow \widehat{\underline{X}}, & H &\leftrightarrow \overline{H}, & \Xi &\leftrightarrow \underline{\Xi}, \\ Z &\leftrightarrow -\overline{Z}, & \omega &\leftrightarrow \underline{\omega}, & \mathcal{D} &\rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{D}}. \end{aligned}$$

Note the anomaly $P \leftrightarrow P$ rather than $P \leftrightarrow \overline{P}$. This is consistent however to setting $\underline{P} = \rho - i^* \rho$ and then $\overline{\underline{P}} = P$.

The complex notations allow us to rewrite the Ricci equations in a more compact form.

Proposition 3.4.10.

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_3 \text{tr} \underline{X} + \frac{1}{2} (\text{tr} \underline{X})^2 + 2\underline{\omega} \text{tr} \underline{X} &= \mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{\Xi} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \overline{H} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot (H - 2Z) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{\underline{X}} \cdot \widehat{\underline{X}}, \\ \nabla_3 \widehat{\underline{X}} + \Re(\text{tr} \underline{X}) \widehat{\underline{X}} + 2\underline{\omega} \widehat{\underline{X}} &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\Xi} + \frac{1}{2} \underline{\Xi} \widehat{\otimes} (H + \underline{H} - 2Z) - \underline{A}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_3 \text{tr} X + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} \text{tr} X - 2\underline{\omega} \text{tr} X &= \mathcal{D} \cdot \overline{H} + H \cdot \overline{H} + 2P + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \underline{\Xi} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot \widehat{X}, \\ \nabla_3 \widehat{X} + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} \widehat{X} - 2\underline{\omega} \widehat{X} &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} H + \frac{1}{2} H \widehat{\otimes} H - \frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} \widehat{X} + \frac{1}{4} \underline{\Xi} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\Xi}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_4 \text{tr} \underline{X} + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} X \text{tr} \underline{X} - 2\omega \text{tr} \underline{X} &= \mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{H} + \underline{H} \cdot \overline{H} + 2\overline{P} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \underline{\Xi} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot \widehat{X}, \\ \nabla_4 \widehat{\underline{X}} + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} X \widehat{\underline{X}} - 2\omega \widehat{\underline{X}} &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{H} + \frac{1}{2} \underline{H} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{H} - \frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} \widehat{\underline{X}} + \frac{1}{4} \underline{\Xi} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\Xi}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_4 \text{tr} X + \frac{1}{2} (\text{tr} X)^2 + 2\omega \text{tr} X &= \mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{\Xi} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \overline{H} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot (H + 2Z) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot \widehat{X}, \\ \nabla_4 \widehat{X} + \Re(\text{tr} X) \widehat{X} + 2\omega \widehat{X} &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\Xi} + \frac{1}{2} \underline{\Xi} \widehat{\otimes} (\underline{H} + H + 2Z) - A. \end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 Z + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} (Z + H) - 2\underline{\omega} (Z - H) &= -2\underline{\mathcal{D}}\underline{\omega} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (\overline{Z} + \overline{H}) \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} X \Xi + 2\underline{\omega} \Xi - \underline{B} + \frac{1}{2} \overline{\Xi} \cdot \widehat{X}, \\
\nabla_4 Z + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} X (Z - \underline{H}) - 2\underline{\omega} (Z + \underline{H}) &= 2\underline{\mathcal{D}}\omega + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (-\overline{Z} + \overline{H}) \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} \Xi - 2\underline{\omega} \Xi - B - \frac{1}{2} \overline{\Xi} \cdot \widehat{X}, \\
\nabla_3 \underline{H} - \nabla_4 \Xi &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} (\underline{H} - H) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (\overline{H} - \overline{H}) - 4\underline{\omega} \Xi + \underline{B}, \\
\nabla_4 H - \nabla_3 \Xi &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} X (H - \underline{H}) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (\overline{H} - \overline{H}) - 4\underline{\omega} \Xi - B,
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\nabla_3 \omega + \nabla_4 \underline{\omega} - 4\underline{\omega} \underline{\omega} - \xi \cdot \underline{\xi} - (\eta - \underline{\eta}) \cdot \zeta + \eta \cdot \underline{\eta} = \rho.$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \widehat{X} + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot \overline{Z} &= \frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \text{tr} \overline{X} + \frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} Z - i\Im(\text{tr} X) H - i\Im(\text{tr} \underline{X}) \Xi - B, \\
\frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \widehat{X} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot \overline{Z} &= \frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{D}} \text{tr} \underline{X} - \frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} Z - i\Im(\text{tr} \underline{X}) \underline{H} - i\Im(\text{tr} X) \Xi + \underline{B},
\end{aligned}$$

and,

$$\text{curl } \zeta = -\frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \wedge \widehat{X} + \frac{1}{4} (\text{tr } \chi^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \text{tr} \underline{\chi}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi) + \omega^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} - \underline{\omega}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi + {}^* \rho.$$

We rewrite the Gauss equation in Proposition 3.0.27 for complex tensors.

Proposition 3.4.11. *The following identity holds true for $\Psi \in \mathfrak{s}_k(\mathbb{C})$ for $k = 1, 2$:*

$$[\nabla_a, \nabla_b] \Psi = \left(\frac{1}{2} ({}^{(a)} \text{tr} \chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \nabla_4) \Psi - ik {}^{(h)} K \Psi \right) \in_{ab} \quad (3.4.6)$$

where

$${}^{(h)} K = -\frac{1}{8} \text{tr} X \overline{\text{tr} \underline{X}} - \frac{1}{8} \text{tr} \underline{X} \overline{\text{tr} X} + \frac{1}{4} \widehat{X} \cdot \overline{\widehat{X}} + \frac{1}{4} \overline{\widehat{X}} \cdot \widehat{X} - \frac{1}{2} P - \frac{1}{2} \overline{P}.$$

The complex notations allow us to rewrite the Bianchi identities as follows.

Proposition 3.4.12. *We have,*

$$\begin{aligned}
\nabla_3 A - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} B &= -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{X} A + 4 \underline{\omega} A + \frac{1}{2} (Z + 4H) \hat{\otimes} B - 3 \bar{P} \hat{X}, \\
\nabla_4 B - \frac{1}{2} \bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot A &= -2 \overline{\text{tr} X} B - 2 \omega B + \frac{1}{2} A \cdot (\overline{2Z + H}) + 3 \bar{P} \Xi, \\
\nabla_3 B - \mathcal{D} \bar{P} &= -\text{tr} \underline{X} B + 2 \underline{\omega} B + \bar{B} \cdot \hat{X} + 3 \bar{P} H + \frac{1}{2} A \cdot \bar{\Xi}, \\
\nabla_4 P - \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \cdot \bar{B} &= -\frac{3}{2} \text{tr} X P + \frac{1}{2} (2 \underline{H} + Z) \cdot \bar{B} - \bar{\Xi} \cdot \underline{B} - \frac{1}{4} \hat{X} \cdot \bar{A}, \\
\nabla_3 P + \frac{1}{2} \bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \underline{B} &= -\frac{3}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} P - \frac{1}{2} (\overline{2H - Z}) \cdot \underline{B} + \Xi \cdot \bar{B} - \frac{1}{4} \hat{X} \cdot \underline{A}, \\
\nabla_4 \underline{B} + \mathcal{D} P &= -\text{tr} X \underline{B} + 2 \omega \underline{B} + \bar{B} \cdot \hat{X} - 3 P \underline{H} - \frac{1}{2} \underline{A} \cdot \bar{\Xi}, \\
\nabla_3 \underline{B} + \frac{1}{2} \bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \mathcal{A} &= -2 \overline{\text{tr} X} \underline{B} - 2 \underline{\omega} \underline{B} - \frac{1}{2} \underline{A} \cdot (\overline{-2Z + H}) - 3 P \Xi, \\
\nabla_4 \underline{A} + \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{D} \hat{\otimes} \underline{B} &= -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} \underline{A} + 4 \omega \underline{A} + \frac{1}{2} (Z - 4 \underline{H}) \hat{\otimes} \underline{B} - 3 P \hat{X}.
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Straightforward verifications by complexifying the Bianchi identities of Proposition 3.1.5. \square

Remark 3.4.13. *Note that both the complex null structure and null Bianchi equations are both invariant with respect to the pairing relations of Remark 3.4.9.*

Remark 3.4.14. *Note that the complex Bianchi identities can be also derive directly from the equations*

$$\mathbf{D}^\alpha \mathcal{R}_{\alpha\beta\gamma\delta} = 0, \quad \mathcal{R} = \mathbf{R} + i \mathbf{*R}.$$

*In view of (3.1.6), $\underline{\alpha}(\mathbf{*R}) = \mathbf{*}\underline{\alpha}(\mathbf{R})$, $\alpha(\mathbf{*R}) = -\mathbf{*}\alpha(\mathbf{R})$, $\underline{\beta}(\mathbf{*R}) = \mathbf{*}\underline{\beta}(\mathbf{R})$, $\beta(\mathbf{*R}) = -\mathbf{*}\beta(\mathbf{R})$, $\rho(\mathbf{*R}) = \mathbf{*}\rho$ and therefore*

$$\mathcal{R}_{a4b4} = \bar{A}_{ab}, \quad \mathcal{R}_{b434} = 2\bar{B}, \quad \mathcal{R}_{3434} = 4P, \quad \mathcal{R}_{b334} = 2\underline{B}_b, \quad \mathcal{R}_{a3b3} = \underline{A}. \quad (3.4.7)$$

3.4.3 Main complex equations using conformal derivatives

Definition 3.4.15. *We define the following conformal angular derivatives in the complex notation:*

- For $a + ib \in \mathfrak{s}_0(\mathbb{C})$ we define

$${}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}(a + ib) := ({}^{(c)}\nabla + i {}^*\mathcal{D})(a + ib).$$

- For $f + i {}^*f \in \mathfrak{s}_1(\mathbb{C})$ we define

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}(f + i {}^*f) &:= ({}^{(c)}\nabla + i {}^*\mathcal{D}) \cdot (f + i {}^*f), \\ {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}(f + i {}^*f) &:= ({}^{(c)}\nabla + i {}^*\mathcal{D})\hat{\otimes}(f + i {}^*f). \end{aligned}$$

- For $u + i {}^*u \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ we define

$${}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot (u + i {}^*u) := ({}^{(c)}\nabla + i {}^*\mathcal{D}) \cdot (u + i {}^*u).$$

- In all the above cases we set

$$\overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} := {}^{(c)}\nabla - i {}^*\mathcal{D}.$$

These complex notations allow us to rewrite the null structure equations as follows.

Proposition 3.4.16. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr}\underline{X} + \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr}\underline{X})^2 &= {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{\Xi} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \overline{H} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot H - \frac{1}{2}\hat{X} \cdot \overline{\hat{X}}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \hat{X} + \Re(\text{tr}\underline{X})\hat{X} &= \frac{1}{2}{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}\underline{\Xi} + \frac{1}{2}\underline{\Xi}\hat{\otimes}(H + \underline{H}) - \underline{A}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr}X + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{X}\text{tr}X &= {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot \overline{H} + H \cdot \overline{H} + 2P + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \underline{\Xi} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{X} \cdot \overline{\hat{X}}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \hat{X} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{X}\hat{X} &= \frac{1}{2}{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}H + \frac{1}{2}H\hat{\otimes}H - \frac{1}{2}\overline{\text{tr}\underline{X}}\hat{X} + \frac{1}{4}\underline{\Xi}\hat{\otimes}\underline{\Xi}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr}\underline{X} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}X\text{tr}\underline{X} &= {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{H} + \underline{H} \cdot \overline{H} + 2\overline{P} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \underline{\Xi} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{X} \cdot \overline{\hat{X}}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \hat{X} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}X\hat{X} &= \frac{1}{2}{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}\underline{H} + \frac{1}{2}\underline{H}\hat{\otimes}\underline{H} - \frac{1}{2}\overline{\text{tr}\underline{X}}\hat{X} + \frac{1}{4}\underline{\Xi}\hat{\otimes}\underline{\Xi}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr}X + \frac{1}{2}(\text{tr}X)^2 &= {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot \underline{\Xi} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \overline{H} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot H - \frac{1}{2}\hat{X} \cdot \overline{\hat{X}}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \hat{X} + \Re(\text{tr}X)\hat{X} &= \frac{1}{2}{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}\underline{\Xi} + \frac{1}{2}\underline{\Xi}\hat{\otimes}(\underline{H} + H) - A, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{H} - {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\Xi} &= -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} (\underline{H} - H) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (\overline{H} - \underline{H}) + \underline{B}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 H - {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \Xi &= -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} (H - \underline{H}) - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{X} \cdot (\overline{H} - \underline{H}) - B.
\end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot \widehat{X} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \overline{\text{tr} X} - i\Im(\text{tr} X) H - i\Im(\text{tr} X) \Xi - B, \\
\frac{1}{2} \overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot \underline{\widehat{X}} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \overline{\text{tr} X} - i\Im(\text{tr} X) \underline{H} - i\Im(\text{tr} X) \underline{\Xi} + \underline{B}.
\end{aligned}$$

The complex notations allow us to rewrite the Bianchi identities as follows.

Proposition 3.4.17. *We have*

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 A - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} B &= -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} A + 2H \widehat{\otimes} B - 3\overline{P} \widehat{X}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 B - \frac{1}{2} \overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot A &= -2\overline{\text{tr} X} B + \frac{1}{2} A \cdot \overline{H} + 3\overline{P} \Xi, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 B - {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \overline{P} &= -\overline{\text{tr} X} B + \overline{B} \cdot \widehat{X} + 3\overline{P} H + \frac{1}{2} A \cdot \overline{\Xi}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 P - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \cdot \overline{B} &= -\frac{3}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} P + \underline{H} \cdot \overline{B} - \overline{\Xi} \cdot \underline{B} - \frac{1}{4} \widehat{X} \cdot \overline{A}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 P + \frac{1}{2} \overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot \underline{B} &= -\frac{3}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} P - \overline{H} \cdot \underline{B} + \underline{\Xi} \cdot \overline{B} - \frac{1}{4} \widehat{X} \cdot \underline{A}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{B} + {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} P &= -\overline{\text{tr} X} \underline{B} + \overline{B} \cdot \widehat{X} - 3P \underline{H} - \frac{1}{2} \underline{A} \cdot \overline{\Xi}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{B} + \frac{1}{2} \overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot A &= -2\overline{\text{tr} X} \underline{B} - \frac{1}{2} \underline{A} \cdot \overline{H} - 3P \underline{\Xi}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{A} + \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{B} &= -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\text{tr} X} \underline{A} - 2\underline{H} \widehat{\otimes} \underline{B} - 3P \underline{\widehat{X}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Remark 3.4.18. *The complex Bianchi equations can also be derived directly from the equation $\mathbf{D}^\alpha \mathcal{R}_{\alpha\beta\gamma\delta} = 0$, see Remark 3.4.2.*

3.4.4 Connection to the Newman-Penrose formalism

In the Newman-Penrose NP formalism, one chooses a specific orthonormal basis of horizontal vectors (e_1, e_2) and defines all connection coefficients relative to the complexified frame (n, l, m, \overline{m}) where $n = \frac{1}{2}e_3$, $l = e_4$, $m = e_1 + ie_2$, $\overline{m} = e_1 - ie_2$. Thus, all quantities of interest are complex scalars instead of our horizontal tensors such as $\mathfrak{s}_1, \mathfrak{s}_2$. The NP

formalism works well for deriving the basic equations, but has the disadvantage of substantially increasing the number of variables. Moreover, the calculations become far more cumbersome when deriving equations involving higher derivatives of the main quantities, in perturbations of Kerr. Another advantage of the formalism used here is that all important equations look similar to the ones in [Ch-Kl]. We refer to [NP] for the original form of the NP formalism.

The formalism used here is also related to the so-called Geroch-Held-Penrose formalism GHP formalism, which also introduced derivatives with boost weights, which are the scalar equivalent of the conformal derivatives used here, see Lemma 3.1.12. Nevertheless, the GHP formalism still involves complex scalars instead of horizontal tensors. We refer to [GHP] for the original form of the GHP formalism.

3.5 The wave operator using complex derivatives

-To Review

We now express the laplacian in terms of complex derivatives. We summarize the result in the following.

Lemma 3.5.1. *We have for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$,*

$$\mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}(\bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) = 4\Delta_2\psi - 2i \left({}^{(a)}tr\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) \psi - 8 {}^{(h)}K\psi \quad (3.5.1)$$

where ${}^{(h)}K$ is defined in (3.1.9). In particular, in perturbations of Kerr we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}(\bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) &= 4\Delta_2\psi - 2i \left({}^{(a)}tr\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) \psi \\ &\quad + 2 \left(tr \chi tr \underline{\chi} + {}^{(a)}tr\chi {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} + 4\rho \right) \psi + (\Gamma_g \cdot \Gamma_b) \cdot \psi, \end{aligned} \quad (3.5.2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D}\hat{\otimes}(\bar{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) &= 4\Delta_2\psi - 2i \left({}^{(a)}tr\chi \nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \right) \psi \\ &\quad + 2 \left(\frac{1}{2} tr X \overline{tr \underline{X}} + \frac{1}{2} tr \underline{X} \overline{tr X} + 2P + 2\bar{P} \right) \psi + (\Gamma_g \cdot \Gamma_b) \cdot \psi. \end{aligned} \quad (3.5.3)$$

Proof. See section ??.

□

We rewrite the above using the conformal derivatives introduced in Lemma 3.1.12.

Lemma 3.5.2. *We have for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ s -conformally invariant,*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}\widehat{\otimes}(\overline{{}^{(c)}\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) &= 4 {}^{(c)}\Delta_2 \psi - 2i \left({}^{(a)}tr\chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 + {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \right) \psi \\ &\quad + 2 \left[\left(tr \chi tr \underline{\chi} + {}^{(a)}tr\chi {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} + 4\rho \right) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - is \left(\frac{1}{2} (tr \chi {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} - tr \underline{\chi} {}^{(a)}tr\chi) + 2 {}^*\rho \right) \right] \psi \\ &\quad + (\Gamma_g \cdot \Gamma_b) \cdot \psi \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.4}$$

where ${}^{(c)}\Delta_2 := \gamma^{ab} {}^{(c)}\nabla_a {}^{(c)}\nabla_b$ is the conformal Laplacian operator for horizontal 2-tensors.

Proof. See section ??.

□

By putting together the canonical expression for the wave operator given in Lemma 3.2.10 and the expression for the Laplacian given in Lemma 3.5.1, we obtain the following.

Corollary 3.5.3. *We have, for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$,*

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}_2 \psi &= -\nabla_4 \nabla_3 \psi + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{D}\widehat{\otimes}(\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) + \left(2\omega - \frac{1}{2} tr X \right) \nabla_3 \psi - \frac{1}{2} tr \underline{X} \nabla_4 \psi + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \nabla \psi \\ &\quad + \left(-\frac{1}{2} tr \chi tr \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(a)}tr\chi {}^{(a)}tr\underline{\chi} - 2\rho \right) \psi + 2i \left({}^*\rho - \eta \wedge \underline{\eta} \right) \psi + (\Gamma_b \cdot \Gamma_g) \cdot \psi, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.5}$$

which can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\square}_2 \psi &= -\nabla_4 \nabla_3 \psi + \frac{1}{4} \mathcal{D}\widehat{\otimes}(\overline{\mathcal{D}} \cdot \psi) + \left(2\omega - \frac{1}{2} tr X \right) \nabla_3 \psi - \frac{1}{2} tr \underline{X} \nabla_4 \psi + 2\underline{\eta} \cdot \nabla \psi \\ &\quad + \left(-\frac{1}{4} tr X \overline{tr \underline{X}} - \frac{1}{4} tr \underline{X} \overline{tr X} - 2\overline{P} \right) \psi - 2i (\eta \wedge \underline{\eta}) \psi + (\Gamma_b \cdot \Gamma_g) \cdot \psi. \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.6}$$

To do from the Bianchi equations using the hodge operators

Chapter 4

Derivation of the main equations in linear perturbations of Schwarzschild

We make use of the results of section 3.3.1 to derive the Teukolsky and RW equations in linear perturbations of Schwarzschild, i.e. we assume that ${}^{(a)}\text{tr}\chi = {}^{(a)}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} = 0$, $\widehat{\chi}, \widehat{\underline{\chi}}, \eta, \underline{\eta}, \zeta, \underline{\xi}, \xi, \underline{\alpha}, \underline{\beta}, \underline{\beta}$ are linear quantities and that we neglect all quadratic and higher order expressions involving them.

4.1 Derivation of the Teukolsky equations

Proposition 4.1.1 (Bianchi-Schw#). *In linear perturbations of Schwarzschild we have¹*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3\rho \widehat{\chi}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\xi \rho, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \varrho + 3\rho \eta, \end{aligned}$$

¹Here $\text{div } \varrho = -(\nabla \rho + {}^*\nabla {}^*\rho)$, $\text{div } \check{\varrho} = -(\nabla \rho - {}^*\nabla {}^*\rho)$.

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \rho &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \beta, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\beta}, \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^*\rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{curl } \beta - \frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^*\rho &= -{}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\beta} - \frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \underline{\beta} &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\rho} - 3\rho \underline{\eta} \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \underline{\beta} &= -{}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\alpha} - 3\underline{\xi} \rho \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \underline{\alpha} &= -{}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\beta} - 3\rho \widehat{\underline{\chi}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. We only need to check the equations for ρ , ${}^*\rho$. Neglecting quadratic terms the Bianchi equations for ρ , ${}^*\rho$ take the form

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \rho - {}^{(c)}\text{div } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \chi \rho \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \beta &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \chi {}^*\rho - {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \chi \rho) \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \rho + {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3 {}^*\rho + {}^{(c)}\text{curl } \underline{\beta} &= -\frac{3}{2}(\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^*\rho + {}^{(a)}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho)
\end{aligned}$$

□

Remark 4.1.2. In view of our definition for ${}^{(c)}\nabla^\#$ applied to Ricci coefficients

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \widehat{\chi} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 1 + 1)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi} = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \widehat{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi} \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \text{tr } \chi &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr } \chi + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \text{tr } \chi \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \widehat{\chi} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 1 + 1)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi} = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \widehat{\chi} + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \widehat{\chi} \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \text{tr } \chi &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \chi + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \chi^2 \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \underline{\widehat{\chi}} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\widehat{\chi}} + \frac{1}{2}(1 + 1 + 1)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \underline{\widehat{\chi}} = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \underline{\widehat{\chi}} + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \underline{\widehat{\chi}} \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \text{tr } \underline{\chi} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \frac{3}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \underline{\widehat{\chi}} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\widehat{\chi}} + \frac{1}{2}(1 - 1 + 1)\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \underline{\widehat{\chi}} = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \underline{\widehat{\chi}} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \underline{\widehat{\chi}} \\
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \text{tr } \underline{\chi} &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition 3.3.1 becomes

Proposition 4.1.3 (Ricci-Schwarzschild#). *We have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} &= \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi}^2 + 2 {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \underline{\xi}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\xi} - \underline{\alpha}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \operatorname{tr} \chi &= 2 {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \eta + 2\rho, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \widehat{\chi} &= -\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \chi \widehat{\chi} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \eta, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} &= 2 {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \underline{\eta} + 2\rho, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= -\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \underline{\eta}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \operatorname{tr} \chi &= \operatorname{tr} \chi^2 + 2 {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \xi, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \chi \widehat{\chi} + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi - \alpha, \end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \widehat{\chi} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla(\operatorname{tr} \chi) - \frac{1}{2} {}^* {}^{(c)}\nabla({}^{(a)}\operatorname{tr} \chi) - \beta, \\ {}^{(c)}\operatorname{div} \widehat{\underline{\chi}} &= \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla(\operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi}) - \frac{1}{2} {}^* {}^{(c)}\nabla({}^{(a)}\operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi}) + \underline{\beta}. \end{aligned}$$

We will make use of the commutation formulas of Corollary 3.3.9.

For linearized perturbations near Schwarzschild we have, for any linear, horizontal, tensorfield U of signature s ,

$$\begin{aligned} [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla]U &= [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla]U = 0, \\ [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#]U &= -s(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \operatorname{tr} \chi)U. \end{aligned}$$

4.1.1 Useful calculations

Lemma 4.1.4. *We have, ignoring quadratic and higher order terms,*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi}) &= \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \left(\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right) + 2(\operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{div} \underline{\xi} + \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \operatorname{div} \eta) \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi}) &= \operatorname{tr} \chi \left(\frac{1}{2} \operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right) + 2(\operatorname{tr} \underline{\chi} \operatorname{div} \xi + \operatorname{tr} \chi \operatorname{div} \underline{\eta}) \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.1}$$

Also,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\rho\widehat{\chi}) = \rho({}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi - \alpha).$$

Proof. Using the equations of Proposition 4.1.3 we calculate,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \text{tr } \chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \text{tr } \underline{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \\ &= (2\text{div } \eta + 2\rho) \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \text{tr } \chi (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 + 2\text{div } \underline{\xi}) - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \chi^2 \\ &= \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right) + 2(\text{tr } \chi \text{div } \underline{\xi} + \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \text{div } \eta) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}) = \text{tr } \chi \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right) + 2(\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \text{div } \xi + \text{tr } \chi \text{div } \underline{\eta}).$$

Now, using the Leibnitz rule for ${}^{(c)}\nabla^\#$ operators and the equations ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \rho = 0$, ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\widehat{\chi}) = \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} + {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi - \alpha$ of Proposition 4.1.3, we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\rho\widehat{\chi}) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \rho \widehat{\chi} + \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} \rho \text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} = \rho \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \widehat{\chi} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \widehat{\chi} \right) \\ &= \rho({}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi - \alpha) \end{aligned}$$

as stated. □

4.1.2 Teukolsky Equation for α

Proposition 4.1.5. *We have*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho\alpha. \quad (4.1.2)$$

Also,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = \Delta\alpha + \left(5\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \right) \alpha. \quad (4.1.3)$$

Proof. We write the first Bianchi pair

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\beta - 3\rho\widehat{\chi}, \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\xi\rho \end{aligned}$$

in the form

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta + i \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + j \\ i &= -3\rho \widehat{\chi} \\ j &= 3\xi \rho \end{aligned}$$

Lemma 4.1.6. *Given*

$$i = -3\rho \widehat{\chi}, \quad j = 3\xi \rho$$

we have

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# i + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} j = 3\rho \alpha \quad (4.1.4)$$

Taking ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#$ and of the first equation, ${}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes}$ of the second equation and using Lemma 3.3.8 we derive

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# i \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} j \end{aligned}$$

Combining we deduce,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# i + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} j.$$

Now, making use of the formula ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (\rho \widehat{\chi}) = \rho ({}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi - \alpha)$ in Lemma 4.1.4

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# i + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} j = -3\rho ({}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi - \alpha) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} (\rho \xi) = 3\rho \alpha \quad (4.1.5)$$

We deduce

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho \alpha.$$

as stated. To prove the second part of the proposition we make use of the Lemma

Lemma 4.1.7. *We have*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \text{div} = \Delta - 2K \quad (4.1.6)$$

where $K = -\rho - \frac{1}{4} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$ is the Gauss curvature

Proof. The Lemma follows from the formula $\mathcal{P}_2^* \mathcal{P}_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \Delta + K$, $\mathcal{P}_2 = \text{div}$, $\mathcal{P}_2^* = -\frac{1}{2} \nabla \widehat{\otimes}$. \square

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= \Delta \alpha - 2K\alpha + 3\rho\alpha = -2(-\rho - \frac{1}{4}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi})\alpha + 3\rho\alpha \\ &= \Delta \alpha + (5\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi})\alpha \end{aligned}$$

as stated. \square

Lemma 4.1.8. *Teukolsky equation takes the form*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + (-2\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi})\alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha.$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} \alpha) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + (\frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \frac{5}{4}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2)\alpha. \end{aligned}$$

Recall that

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} = -\frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + 2 {}^{(c)}\text{div } \underline{\eta} + 2\rho$$

Hence

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + (\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2)\alpha$$

Therefore equation ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho\alpha$ takes the form

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + (\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2)\alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho\alpha$$

or,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{5}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 \alpha + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \alpha + (-2\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi})\alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha.$$

\square

4.2 Derivation of the RW equation

4.2.1 The commuted First Bianchi system

We commute the first Bianchi system with ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ and $Q = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3\rho \widehat{\chi} \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho \xi \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 4.2.1. *Ignoring quadratic terms we have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta - 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \widehat{\chi}), \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi \right) \beta + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi). \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} Q(\beta) - 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \widehat{\chi}) \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# Q(\beta) &= {}^{(c)}\text{div } Q(\alpha) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \chi \right) \beta \right) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi) \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.2)$$

Proof. We start with

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta - 3\rho \widehat{\chi}.$$

Apply ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ (note that ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha$ has signature 1 and rank 3) and apply the commutator lemma to obtain

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha = {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta - 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \widehat{\chi}).$$

which is the first equation in (4.2.1).

Starting with

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta = {}^{(c)}\text{div } \alpha + 3\rho \xi$$

we apply ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ to both sides

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \beta = {}^{(c)}\text{div } {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi).$$

or,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta + [{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#] \beta = {}^{(c)}\text{div } {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi).$$

Using the commutator identity of Lemma 3.3.8, where $s = \text{sign}(\psi) = 1$,

$$[(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, (^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#)]\beta = \left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\chi\right)\beta =$$

we deduce

$$(^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) = (^{(c)}\text{div } (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) - \left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\chi\right)\beta + 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi).$$

Hence $(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha, (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta)$ verify the system

$$\begin{aligned} (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) &= (^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes})(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) - 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi})) \\ (^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) &= (^{(c)}\text{div } (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) - \left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\chi\right)\beta + 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi). \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.3)$$

as stated in (4.2.1).

Next we apply $(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ to the first equation in (4.2.1), commute, and derive

$$\begin{aligned} (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= (^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes})(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) - 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi})) \\ &= (^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes})Q(\beta) - 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi})). \end{aligned}$$

which is the first equation in (4.2.2).

Applying $(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ to the second equation in (4.2.3) and commuting as before we derive

$$\begin{aligned} &(^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) + [(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, (^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#)](^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) \\ &= (^{(c)}\text{div } (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha) - (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\chi\right)\beta\right) + 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi). \end{aligned}$$

Since $(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta)$ has signature zero $[(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#, (^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#)](^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \beta) = 0$. We deduce,

$$(^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# Q(\beta) = (^{(c)}\text{div } Q(\beta) + (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\chi\right)\beta\right) + 3(^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi).$$

which is the second equation in (4.2.2). □

4.2.2 Teuklosky equation for $Q(\alpha)$

We rewrite the result of the second part of Proposition 4.2.1 in the form

$$\begin{aligned} (^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= (^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes})Q(\beta) + I \\ (^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# Q(\beta) &= \text{div } Q(\alpha) + J \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.4)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} I &= -3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \widehat{\chi}) \\ J &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) \beta \right) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi) \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.5)$$

Proposition 4.2.2. *The following identity holds true*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# I + {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} J = \left(-\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \right) Q(\alpha). \quad (4.2.6)$$

The proof is an immediate consequence of the following calculations.

Lemma 4.2.3. *The following identities hold true.*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# I &= 3\rho Q(\alpha) - 3 \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \xi) \\ &\quad - 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \chi \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \right) (\rho \widehat{\chi}) \right). \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} J &= \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) Q(\alpha) + 3 \rho \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha \\ &\quad + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) \rho \widehat{\chi} \right) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho \nabla \widehat{\otimes} \xi) \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.8)$$

Proof. We start with checking (4.2.8). Making use of

$${}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + 3 \widehat{\chi} \rho$$

we deduce

$$\begin{aligned} & {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) \beta \right) = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) {}^{(c)}\nabla \widehat{\otimes} \beta \right) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) ({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + 3 \rho \widehat{\chi}) \right) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha \right) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) \rho \widehat{\chi} \right) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) Q(\alpha) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2} \text{tr} \underline{\chi} \text{tr} \chi \right) \rho \widehat{\chi} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
& {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) \beta \right) \\
&= \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) Q(\alpha) + 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) \rho\widehat{\chi} \right) \\
&+ \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) \right) {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha
\end{aligned}$$

In view of Lemma 4.1.4 we have, modulo linear terms,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\underline{\chi}) = \text{tr}\underline{\chi} \left(\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right).$$

Thus, since also ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\rho) = 0$,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) = \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \left(\frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\chi\text{tr}\underline{\chi} + 2\rho \right)$$

and therefore,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi} \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) = 3\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\rho.$$

Henceforth

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) \beta \right) &= \left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) Q(\alpha) + 3\rho\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha \\
&+ 3 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(-4\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}\underline{\chi}\text{tr}\chi \right) \rho\widehat{\chi} \right)
\end{aligned}$$

from which (4.2.8) easily follows.

To check (4.2.7) we write, commuting ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#$ with ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#$ twice,

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) + [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#] {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) \\
&= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left([{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#] (\rho\widehat{\chi}) \right) \\
&\quad + [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#] {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) \\
&= I_1 + I_2 + I_3
\end{aligned}$$

Recall, see 4.1.4,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) = \rho \left({}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi - \alpha \right).$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
I_1 &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\rho({}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi - \alpha) \right) \\
&= -{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\alpha) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\xi) \\
&= -{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\alpha) + {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi)
\end{aligned}$$

Also, since ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \rho = 0$,

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\alpha) = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \rho\alpha + \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha = \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha$$

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\alpha) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha \right) \\
&= \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha \right) - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha) \\
&= \rho Q(\alpha) - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha) \\
&= \rho Q(\alpha) - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2} \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho) + \alpha {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho) - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}(\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho\alpha) \right) \\
&= \rho Q(\alpha) - \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\alpha {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho) + \frac{1}{4}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho\alpha
\end{aligned}$$

We deduce,

$$\begin{aligned}
{}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\alpha) &= \rho Q(\alpha) - \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + \frac{1}{4}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho\alpha \\
&\quad - \frac{1}{2}\alpha \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho + \text{tr } \underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho \right) \\
&= \rho Q(\alpha) - \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + \frac{1}{4}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\alpha (\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}^2 \rho) \\
&= \rho Q(\alpha) - \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha
\end{aligned}$$

and therefore,

$$I_1 = -\rho Q(\alpha) + \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + {}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\xi). \quad (4.2.9)$$

Note that the signature of ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi})$ is zero and therefore, in view of the commutator Lemma 3.3.8

$$I_3 = [{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#] {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# (\rho\widehat{\chi}) = 0. \quad (4.2.10)$$

It remains to calculate I_2 .

$$I_2 = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left([{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#](\rho\hat{\chi}) \right)$$

In view of the commutator Lemma 3.3.8 and

$$[{}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#, {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#](\rho\hat{\chi}) = \left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\right)(\rho\hat{\chi})$$

Thus

$$I_2 = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\right)(\rho\hat{\chi}) \right)$$

We deduce

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\rho\hat{\chi}) &= I_1 + I_2 + I_3 \\ &= -\rho Q(\alpha) + \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \rho {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \alpha + {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\rho\xi) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# \left(\left(4\rho - \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}\right)(\rho\hat{\chi}) \right) \end{aligned}$$

from which (4.2.7) follows. □

As a corollary of (4.2.4) and Proposition 4.2.2 we derive the Teukolski equation for $Q(\alpha)$.

Proposition 4.2.4. *$Q(\alpha)$ verifies,*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) = {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} \text{div } Q(\alpha) + \left(-\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \right) Q(\alpha) \quad (4.2.11)$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 Q(\beta) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# I \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} (\text{div } Q(\alpha) + J) + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# I \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} \text{div } Q(\alpha) + {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} J + {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# I \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla \hat{\otimes} \text{div } Q(\alpha) + \left(-\rho + \frac{1}{2}\text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \right) Q(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

as stated. □

Proposition 4.2.5. *We have*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) = \Delta Q(\alpha) + \left(\rho + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \right) Q(\alpha) \quad (4.2.12)$$

Proof. Note that

$${}^{(c)}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}\operatorname{div} = \Delta - 2K \quad (4.2.13)$$

where $K = -\frac{1}{4}\operatorname{tr}\chi\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} - \rho + \frac{1}{2}\widehat{\chi}\cdot\widehat{\chi} = -\rho - \frac{1}{4}\operatorname{tr}\chi\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}$ is the Gauss curvature. This follows from the formula $\not{d}_2^*\not{d}_2 = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta + K$ where $\not{d}_2 = \operatorname{div}$, $\not{d}_2^* = -\frac{1}{2}\nabla\widehat{\otimes}$. \square

Remark 4.2.6. *We have*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) = {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\left(\operatorname{tr}\chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 Q(\alpha)\right) + 5(\rho + \operatorname{tr}\chi\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}).$$

Proof. We have $\operatorname{sign}(Q(\alpha)) = 0$, $\operatorname{rank}(Q(\alpha)) = 4$ and $\operatorname{sign}({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha)) = -1$, $\operatorname{rank}({}^{(c)}\nabla_3(Q(\alpha))) = 5$,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}Q(\alpha) \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}Q(\alpha) \right) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}Q(\alpha) \right) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\chi \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}Q(\alpha) \right) \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\chi {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 Q(\alpha) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 Q(\alpha) \\ &\quad + \frac{5}{2} \left({}^{(c)}\nabla_4(\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}) + \frac{5}{2}\operatorname{tr}\chi\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} \right) Q(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

The result then follows by a simple computation using ${}^{(c)}\nabla_4(\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}) = -\frac{1}{2}\operatorname{tr}\chi\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} + 2\rho$. \square

4.2.3 Function r and normalizations

Outgoing frame for which e_4 is geodesic

In this case $e_4 = \Upsilon^{-1}\partial_t + \partial_r$, $e_3 = \partial_t - \Upsilon\partial_r$, $\xi = \omega = 0$, $\underline{\omega} = \frac{m}{r^2}$, $\operatorname{tr}\chi = \frac{2}{r}$, $\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi} = -\frac{2}{r}\Upsilon$. We have

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r) = \frac{r}{2}\operatorname{tr}\underline{\chi}, \quad {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r) = \frac{r}{2}\operatorname{tr}\chi$$

Lemma 4.2.7. *For a tensor ψ of signature s and rank k we have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi) &= r^{-1+s-k} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^{1-s+k}\psi) \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\psi) &= r^{-1-s-k} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r^{1+s+k}\psi). \end{aligned} \quad (4.2.14)$$

Ingoing frame for which e_3 is geodesic

In this case $e_3 = \Upsilon^{-1}\partial_t + \partial_r$, $e_3 = \partial_t + \Upsilon\partial_r$, $\underline{\xi} = \underline{\omega} = 0$, $\omega = -\frac{m}{r^2}$, $\text{tr } \chi = \frac{2\Upsilon}{r}$, $\text{tr } \underline{\chi} = -\frac{1}{r}$. In this case also

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r) = \frac{r}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}, \quad {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r) = \frac{r}{2}\text{tr } \chi$$

Thus in both cases

Lemma 4.2.8. *For a tensor ψ of signature s and rank k we have*

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi) &= r^{-1+s-k} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^{1-s+k}\psi) \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\psi) &= r^{-1-s-k} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r^{1+s+k}\psi). \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.15}$$

Proof. Indeed

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#(\psi) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 + \frac{1-s+k}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\psi \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\#(\psi) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 + \frac{1+s+k}{2}\text{tr } \chi\psi \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} r^{-1+s-k} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^{1-s+k}\psi) &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi + (1-s+k)r^{-1+s-k}r^{-s+k}\frac{r}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\psi \\ &= {}^{(c)}\nabla_3\psi + \frac{1-s+k}{2}\text{tr } \underline{\chi}\psi = {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\#\psi \end{aligned}$$

and similarly for the second equation in (4.2.15). □

4.2.4 Regge-Wheeler equation

Lemma 4.2.9. *We have*

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) = r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^5 Q(\alpha)) \tag{4.2.16}$$

Proof. To check (4.2.16) we write (note that $Q(\alpha)$ has signature 0 and rank 4.) Thus, since ${}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha)$ has signature -1 and rank 5.

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) &= r^{-1-(-1)-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r^{1+(-1)+5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha)) = r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r^5 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha)) \\ &= r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4(r^5 r^{-1+0-4} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^{1+0+4} Q(\alpha))) \\ &= r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3(r^5 Q(\alpha)) \end{aligned}$$

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4^\# {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha) = r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 (r^5 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3^\# Q(\alpha)) = r^{-5} {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 (r^5 Q(\alpha))$$

□

Theorem 4.2.10. *The quantity $\mathfrak{q} = r^4 Q(\alpha)$ verifies,*

$$\dot{\square} \mathfrak{q} + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} = 0. \quad (4.2.17)$$

Proof. Recall that the wave operator for $\psi \in \mathfrak{s}_2(\mathbb{C})$ is given by

$$\dot{\square} = -\nabla_4 \nabla_3 \psi - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \psi + \left(2\omega - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \right) \nabla_3 \psi + \Delta_2 \psi$$

Equation (4.2.12) takes the form, with $\mathfrak{q} = r^4 Q(\alpha)$

$${}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 (r\mathfrak{q}) = \Delta r\mathfrak{q} + (\rho + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}) r\mathfrak{q} \quad (4.2.18)$$

Now, using the equation $\nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} = -\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + 2\rho + 2\omega \text{tr } \underline{\chi}$,

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 (r\mathfrak{q}) &= \nabla_3 (r\mathfrak{q}) = \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + r \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} \\ {}^{(c)}\nabla_4 {}^{(c)}\nabla_3 (r\mathfrak{q}) &= \nabla_4 \left(\frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + r \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} \right) - 2\omega \left(\frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + r \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} \right) \\ &= \frac{r}{4} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \chi \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + r \nabla_4 \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} \\ &\quad - 2\omega \left(\frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} + r \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} \right) \\ &= r \nabla_4 \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + r \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi - 2\omega \right) \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \mathfrak{q} \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2} r \mathfrak{q} \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} + \nabla_4 \text{tr } \underline{\chi} - 2\omega \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \right). \\ &= r \nabla_4 \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + r \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi - 2\omega \right) \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \mathfrak{q} + r \rho \mathfrak{q} \end{aligned}$$

Using (4.2.18)

$$r \nabla_4 \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + r \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi - 2\omega \right) \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + \frac{r}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \mathfrak{q} + r \rho \mathfrak{q} = r \Delta \mathfrak{q} + (\rho + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi}) r \mathfrak{q}$$

Therefore

$$-\nabla_4 \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} + \Delta \mathfrak{q} - \left(\frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \chi - 2\omega \right) \nabla_3 \mathfrak{q} - \frac{1}{2} \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \nabla_4 \mathfrak{q} + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathfrak{q} = 0.$$

Therefore,

$$\dot{\square} \mathbf{q} + \text{tr } \chi \text{tr } \underline{\chi} \mathbf{q} = 0.$$

as stated.

□

Appendix A

Wave propagation in Minkowski space

A.1 General Facts about scalar wave equations

A.1.1 Energy-Momentum Tensor

Consider the wave equation,

$$\square_{\mathbf{g}}\phi = f. \quad (\text{A.1.1})$$

in a time oriented¹ Lorentzian manifold (\mathbf{M}, \mathbf{g}) . with \mathbf{D} denoting the covariant derivative
Let

$$\mathbf{Q}_{\alpha\beta} = \mathbf{Q}_{\alpha\beta}[\phi] = \mathbf{D}_{\alpha}\phi\mathbf{D}_{\beta}\phi - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}_{\alpha\beta}(\mathbf{g}^{\mu\nu}\mathbf{D}_{\mu}\phi\mathbf{D}_{\nu}\phi),$$

be the energy momentum tensor associated to ϕ .

Lemma A.1.1. *The energy momentum tensor $\mathbf{Q}_{\mu\nu}$ is symmetric, verifies the local conservation laws,*

$$\mathbf{D}^{\beta}\mathbf{Q}_{\alpha\beta} = f\mathbf{D}_{\alpha}\phi$$

and the positive energy condition, i.e. for all causal, future directed, vector fields X, Y ,

$$\mathbf{Q}(X, Y) \geq 0,$$

¹This means that there exists a globally defined timelike vectorfield T .

A.1.2 Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields

Definition. A diffeomorphism $\Phi : \mathcal{U} \subset \mathbf{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{M}$ is said to be a conformal isometry if, at every point p , $\Phi_*\mathbf{g} = \Lambda^2\mathbf{g}$, that is,

$$(\Phi^*\mathbf{g})(X, Y)|_p = \mathbf{g}(\Phi_*X, \Phi_*Y)|_{\Phi(p)} = \Lambda^2\mathbf{g}(X, Y)|_p$$

with $\Lambda \neq 0$. If $\Lambda = 1$, Φ is called an isometry of \mathbf{M} .

Definition. A vector field K which generates a one parameter group of isometries (respectively, conformal isometries) is called a Killing (respectively, conformal Killing) vector field.

Let K be such a vector field and Φ_t the corresponding one parameter group. Since the $(\Phi_t)_*$ are conformal isometries, we infer that $\mathcal{L}_K\mathbf{g}$ must be proportional to the metric \mathbf{g} . Moreover $\mathcal{L}_K\mathbf{g} = 0$ if K is a Killing vector field.

Definition A.1.2. Given an arbitrary vector field X we denote $^{(X)}\pi$ the deformation tensor of X defined by the formula

$$^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} = (\mathcal{L}_X g)_{\alpha\beta} = \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\beta + \mathbf{D}_\beta X_\alpha .$$

The tensor $^{(X)}\pi$ measures, in a precise sense, how much the diffeomorphism generated by X differs from an isometry or a conformal isometry. The following simple Proposition holds true

Proposition A.1.3. The vector field X is Killing if and only if $^{(X)}\pi = 0$. It is conformal Killing if and only if $^{(X)}\pi$ is proportional to \mathbf{g} .

Lemma A.1.4. Given an arbitrary vectorfield X with deformation tensor $^{(X)}\pi$ we have the identity

$$\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda = \mathbf{R}_{\lambda\alpha\beta\sigma} X^\sigma + ^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda}.$$

where

$$^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{D}_\beta ^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\lambda} + \mathbf{D}_\alpha ^{(X)}\pi_{\beta\lambda} - \mathbf{D}_\lambda ^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} \right) .$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned}
2^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda} &= \mathbf{D}_\beta^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\lambda} + \mathbf{D}_\alpha^{(X)}\pi_{\beta\lambda} - \mathbf{D}_\lambda^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} \\
&= \mathbf{D}_\beta(\mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda + \mathbf{D}_\lambda X_\alpha) + \mathbf{D}_\alpha(\mathbf{D}_\beta X_\lambda + \mathbf{D}_\lambda X_\beta) - \mathbf{D}_\lambda(\mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\beta + \mathbf{D}_\beta X_\alpha) \\
&= \mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\beta X_\lambda + \mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda + (\mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\lambda - \mathbf{D}_\lambda \mathbf{D}_\alpha)X_\beta + (\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\lambda - \mathbf{D}_\lambda \mathbf{D}_\beta)X_\alpha \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda + (\mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\beta - \mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha)X_\lambda + (\mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\lambda - \mathbf{D}_\lambda \mathbf{D}_\alpha)X_\beta + (\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\lambda - \mathbf{D}_\lambda \mathbf{D}_\beta)X_\alpha \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda + \mathbf{R}_{\lambda\sigma\alpha\beta}X^\sigma + \mathbf{R}_{\beta\sigma\alpha\lambda}X^\sigma + \mathbf{R}_{\alpha\sigma\beta\lambda}X^\sigma \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda - (\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\lambda\alpha\beta} + \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda} + \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\alpha\beta\lambda})X^\sigma \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda - (\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\lambda\alpha\beta} - \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda} + \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\alpha\beta\lambda})X^\sigma - 2\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda}X^\lambda \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda - (\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\lambda\alpha\beta} + \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\lambda\alpha} + \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\alpha\beta\lambda})X^\sigma - 2\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda}X^\sigma \\
&= 2\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda - 2\mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda}X^\lambda
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda = \mathbf{R}_{\sigma\beta\alpha\lambda}X^\sigma + {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda} = \mathbf{R}_{\alpha\lambda\sigma\beta}X^\sigma + {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda} = \mathbf{R}_{\lambda\alpha\beta\sigma}X^\sigma + {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda}$$

as stated. \square

Proposition A.1.5. *On any pseudo-riemannian spacetime \mathbf{M} , of dimension $n = p + q$, there can be no more than $\frac{1}{2}(p + q)(p + q + 1)$ linearly independent Killing vector fields.*

Proof. If X is a Killing vector field equation

$$\mathbf{D}_\beta(\mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda) = \mathbf{R}_{\lambda\alpha\beta\delta}X^\delta.$$

and this implies, in view of the theorem of existence and uniqueness for ordinary differential equations, that any Killing vector field is completely determined by the $\frac{1}{2}(p + q)(p + q + 1)$ values of X and $\mathbf{D}X$ at a given point. \square

The n -dimensional Riemannian manifold which possesses the maximum number of Killing vector fields is the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^n . Similarly the Minkowski spacetime \mathbb{R}^{n+1} is the Lorentzian manifold with the maximum numbers of Killing vectorfields.

Corollary A.1.6. *If X is a conformal Killing vectorfield on a Ricci flat manifold of dimension $n + 1$ and ${}^{(X)}\pi = \Lambda \mathbf{g}$ then, for all $n \geq 1$ $\mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta} \mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\beta \Lambda = 0$ and, for all $n > 1$, $\mathbf{D}_\alpha \mathbf{D}_\beta \Lambda = 0$.*

Proof. Indeed $\mathbf{D}_\beta \mathbf{D}_\alpha X_\lambda = \mathbf{R}_{\lambda\alpha\beta\delta}X^\delta + {}^{(X)}\Gamma_{\alpha\beta\lambda}$ from which,

$$\square_{\mathbf{g}} X_\lambda = {}^{(X)}\Gamma_\mu = -\frac{n-1}{2} \mathbf{D}_\lambda \Lambda$$

Note that for Ricci flat spacetimes $\mathbf{D}^\lambda(\square X_\lambda) = \square(\mathbf{D}^\lambda X_\lambda)$. Hence,

$$\square(\text{Div} X) = \frac{1-n}{2}\square\Lambda$$

On the other hand,

$$\mathbf{D}^\lambda X_\lambda = \frac{1}{2}\text{tr}^{(X)}\pi = \frac{1}{2}(n+1)\Lambda$$

Hence,

$$\frac{1}{2}(n+1)\square\Lambda = \frac{1-n}{2}\square\Lambda$$

from which we deduce,

$$\square\Lambda = 0. \tag{A.1.2}$$

To prove the second part it suffices to commute the equation $\square X_\lambda = -\frac{n-1}{2}\mathbf{D}_\lambda\Lambda$ with covariant derivatives as follows,

$$\begin{aligned} \square\mathbf{D}_\mu X_\lambda &= -\frac{n-1}{2}\mathbf{D}_\mu\mathbf{D}_\lambda\Lambda \\ \square\mathbf{D}_\lambda X_\mu &= -\frac{n-1}{2}\mathbf{D}_\lambda\mathbf{D}_\mu\Lambda \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$-(n-1)\mathbf{D}_\mu\mathbf{D}_\lambda\Lambda = \square^{(X)}\pi_{\mu\lambda} = \square(\Lambda\mathbf{g}_{\mu\nu}) = 0.$$

□

Corollary A.1.7. *The total number of independent conformal Killing vectorfields on a Ricci flat manifold \mathbf{M}^{1+n} , $n \geq 2$, cannot exceed $\frac{(n+1)(n+2)}{2}$.*

A.1.3 Commutation of \square_g with a vectorfield

Lemma A.1.8. *Consider a vectorfield X , with deformation tensor $^{(X)}\pi$ and $Q_{\alpha\beta} = \mathbf{D}_\alpha\phi\mathbf{D}_\beta\phi - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{g}\mathbf{D}^\alpha\phi\mathbf{D}_\alpha\phi$ the energy momentum tensor of the scalar wave operator $\square_{\mathbf{g}}$. We have:*

$$X(\square_{\mathbf{g}}\phi) = \square_{\mathbf{g}}(X\phi) - ^{(X)}\pi^{\alpha\beta}\mathbf{D}_\alpha\mathbf{D}_\beta\phi - \left(2\mathbf{D}^\beta ^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} - \mathbf{D}_\alpha(\text{tr}^{(X)}\pi)\right)\mathbf{D}^\alpha\phi$$

Proof. Direct computation. This is also an immediate consequence of the general commutation formula of Lemma(3.2.3). \square

Corollary A.1.9. *If X is a conformal Killing vectorfield on a Ricci flat manifold $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$ we have*

$$[X, \square_{\mathbf{g}}]\phi = -\Lambda \square_{\mathbf{g}}\phi - (n-1)\mathbf{D}^\alpha \Lambda \mathbf{D}_\alpha \phi.$$

Moreover,

$$\left[X - \frac{n-1}{2}\Lambda, \square_{\mathbf{g}}\right]\phi = -\frac{n-3}{2}\Lambda \square_{\mathbf{g}}\phi.$$

A.1.4 Generalized Integral currents

The integral current method is based on the following calculation (see the more general formula of Proposition 3.2.9):

Lemma A.1.10. *Given a vectorfield X , a scalar w and a 1-form M , the generalized current*

$$P_\mu := P_\mu[X, w, M] = \mathbf{Q}_{\mu\nu}X^\nu + \frac{1}{2}w\phi\partial_\mu\phi - \frac{1}{4}\partial_\mu w\phi^2 + \frac{1}{4}M_\mu\phi^2$$

verifies

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu &= (X(\phi) + \frac{1}{2}w\phi)\square\phi + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{Q}_{\mu\nu}^{(X)}\pi^{\mu\nu} - \frac{1}{4}\square w\phi^2 + \frac{1}{2}w\mathbf{D}^\mu\phi\mathbf{D}_\mu\phi \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2}M^\mu\phi\partial_\mu\phi + \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{D}_\mu M^\mu\phi^2 \end{aligned} \tag{A.1.3}$$

Proof. Direct computation. See also the more general Proposition 3.2.9. \square

Corollary A.1.11. *Assume that X is conformal Killing, i.e. $^{(X)}\pi = \Omega\mathbf{g}$ for some scalar Ω , and*

$$P_\mu = \mathbf{Q}_{\mu\nu}X^\nu + \frac{n-1}{4}\Omega\phi\partial_\mu\phi - \frac{n-1}{8}\partial_\mu\Omega\phi^2.$$

Then

$$\mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu = (X(\phi) + \frac{1}{2}w\phi)\square\phi$$

Lemma A.1.12 (Divergence lemma). *Consider a vectorfield X in domain $\mathcal{D} \subset \mathcal{M}$ with future space-like boundaries $\partial^+\mathcal{D}$ and past boundary $\partial^-\mathcal{D}$. We have*

$$\int_{\partial^+\mathcal{D}} \mathbf{g}(X, N) - \int_{\partial^-\mathcal{D}} \mathbf{g}(X, N) = - \int_{\mathcal{D}} \text{Div}(X).$$

where N denote the future normal to the boundary.

Proof. Application of Stokes Theorem. □

A.2 Classical Vectorfield Method in Minkowski space

A.2.1 Symmetries of Minkowski space

Let x^μ be an inertial coordinate system of Minkowski space \mathbb{R}^{n+1} . The following are all the isometries and conformal isometries of \mathbb{R}^{n+1} .

1. Translations: For any given vector $a = (a^0, a^1, \dots, a^n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$: $x^\mu \rightarrow x^\mu + a^\mu$.
2. Lorentz rotations: For any $\Lambda = \Lambda_\sigma^\rho \in \mathbf{O}(1, n)$: $x^\mu \rightarrow \Lambda_\nu^\mu x^\nu$.
3. Scalings: For any real number $\lambda \neq 0$: $x^\mu \rightarrow \lambda x^\mu$.
4. Inversion: Consider the transformation $x^\mu \rightarrow I(x^\mu)$, where $I(x^\mu) = \frac{x^\mu}{(x, x)}$ is defined for all points $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ such that $(x, x) \neq 0$.

The first two sets of transformations are isometries of \mathbb{R}^{n+1} , the group generated by them is called the Poincaré group. The last two type of transformations are conformal isometries. the group generated by all the above transformations is called the Conformal group. In fact the Liouville theorem, whose infinitesimal version will be proved later on, states that it is the group of all the conformal isometries of \mathbb{R}^{n+1} .

We next list the Killing and conformal Killing vector fields which generate the above transformations.

- i. The generators of translations in the x^μ directions, $\mu = 0, 1, \dots, n$: $\mathbf{T}_\mu = \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu}$
- ii. The generators of the Lorentz rotations in the (μ, ν) plane:, $\mathbf{L}_{\mu\nu} = x_\mu \partial_\nu - x_\nu \partial_\mu$.

iii. The generators of the scaling transformations: $\mathbf{S} = x^\mu \partial_\mu$.

iv. The generators of the inverted translations: $\mathbf{K}_\mu = 2x_\mu x^\rho \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\rho} - (x^\rho x_\rho) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^\mu}$.

Denoting $\mathcal{P}(1, n)$ the Lie algebra generated by the vector fields $\mathbf{T}_\alpha, \mathbf{L}_{\beta\gamma}$ and $\underline{\mathcal{K}}(1, n)$ the Lie algebra generated by all the vector fields $\mathbf{T}_\alpha, \mathbf{L}_{\beta\gamma}, \mathbf{S}, \mathbf{K}_\delta$ we state the following version of the Liouville theorem,

Theorem A.2.1. *The following statements hold true.*

1) $\mathcal{P}(1, n)$ is the Lie algebra of all Killing vector fields in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} .

2) If $n > 1$, $\underline{\mathcal{K}}(1, n)$ is the Lie algebra of all conformal Killing vector fields in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} .

3) If $n = 1$, the set of all conformal Killing vector fields in \mathbb{R}^{1+1} is given by the following expression

$$f(x^0 + x^1)(\partial_0 + \partial_1) + g(x^0 - x^1)(\partial_0 - \partial_1)$$

where f, g are arbitrary smooth functions of one variable.

Proof: If X is Killing Therefore, there exist constants $a_{\mu\nu}, b_\mu$ such that $X^\mu = a_{\mu\nu}x^\nu + b_\mu$. Since X is Killing $\mathbf{D}_\mu X_\nu = -\mathbf{D}_\nu X_\mu$ which implies $a_{\mu\nu} = -a_{\nu\mu}$. Consequently X can be written as a linear combination, with real coefficients, of the vector fields $T_\alpha, L_{\beta\gamma}$.

Let now X be a conformal Killing vector field, i.e.

$${}^{(X)}\pi_{\rho\sigma} = \Lambda \mathbf{m}_{\rho\sigma}$$

In view of Corollary A.1.6 $\square\Lambda = 0$ and moreover, for $n \neq 1$, $D_\mu D_\lambda \Lambda = 0$. This implies that Λ must be a linear function of x^μ . We can therefore find a linear combination, with constant coefficients, $cS + d^\alpha K_\alpha$ such that the deformation tensor of $X - (cS + d^\alpha K_\alpha)$ must be zero. This is the case because ${}^{(S)}\pi = 2\mathbf{m}$ and ${}^{(K_\mu)}\pi = 4x_\mu \mathbf{m}$. Therefore $X - (cS + d^\alpha K_\alpha)$ is Killing which, in view of the first part of the theorem, proves the result.

To establish Part 3 we set $X = a\partial_0 + b\partial_1$ and obtain $2D_0X_0 = -\Lambda$, $2D_1X_1 = \Lambda$ and $D_0X_1 + D_1X_0 = 0$. Hence a, b verify the system

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial x^0} = \frac{\partial b}{\partial x^1}, \quad \frac{\partial b}{\partial x^0} = \frac{\partial a}{\partial x^1}.$$

Hence the one form $adx^0 + bdx^1$ is exact, $adx^0 + bdx^1 = d\phi$, and $\frac{\partial^2 a}{(\partial x^0)^2} = \frac{\partial^2 b}{(\partial x^1)^2}$, that is $\square\phi = 0$. In conclusion

$$X = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x^0} + \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x^1} \right) (\partial_0 + \partial_1) + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x^0} - \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x^1} \right) (\partial_0 - \partial_1)$$

which proves the result.

Remark. Expressed relative to the canonical null pair $L = \partial_t + \partial_r$, $\underline{L} = \partial_t - \partial_r$,

$$\mathbf{T}_0 = 2^{-1}(L + \underline{L}), \quad \mathbf{S} = 2^{-1}(\underline{u}L + u\underline{L}), \quad \mathbf{K}_0 = 2^{-1}(\underline{u}^2L + u^2\underline{L}). \quad (\text{A.2.1})$$

Both $\mathbf{T}_0 = \partial_t$ and $\mathbf{K}_0 = (t^2 + |x|^2)\partial_t + 2tx^i\partial_i$ are causal². Observe that \mathbf{S} is causal only in $\mathcal{J}^+(0) \cup \mathcal{J}^-(0)$. We note also that $^{(S)}\pi = 2\mathbf{m}$, $^{(K_0)}\pi = 4t\mathbf{m}$ and therefore, in view of Corollary A.1.9,

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathbf{S}, \square] &= -2\square, \\ [\mathbf{K}_0, \square] &= -4t\square + 4(n-1)\partial_t \\ [\mathbf{K}_0 + 2(n-1)t\square] &= -2t\square \end{aligned}$$

The general vectorfield method applied to the flat wave operator is based on commutation and integral currents.

A.2.2 Wave equation in Minkowski space \mathbb{R}^{n+1}

The canonical, inertial, coordinates in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} are denoted by x^μ , $\mu = 0, 1, \dots, n$ relative to which the Minkowski metric takes the diagonal form $\mathbf{m}_{\mu\nu} = \text{diag}(-1, 1, \dots, 1)$. We have $x^0 = t$ and $x = (x^1, \dots, x^n)$ denote the spatial coordinates. We make use of the standard summation convention over repeated indices and those concerning raising and lowering the indices of vectors and tensors. In particular, if $x_\mu = m_{\mu\nu}x^\nu$, we have $x_0 = -t$ and $x_i = x^i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. We denote by Σ_{t_0} the spacelike hyperplanes $t = t_0$. The wave operator is defined by $\square = \mathbf{m}^{\alpha\beta}\partial_\alpha\partial_\beta = -\partial_t^2 + \sum_i \partial_i^2$. In polar coordinates $t, r, \theta^1, \dots, \theta^n$ the metric takes the form

$$-dt^2 + dr^2 + r^2 d\sigma_{n-1}^2.$$

The functions $u = \frac{1}{2}(t - r)$, $v = \frac{1}{2}(t + r)$ are optical, i.e. they verify the eikonal equation $\mathbf{m}^{\alpha\beta}\partial_\alpha u \partial_\beta u = \mathbf{m}^{\alpha\beta}\partial_\alpha v \partial_\beta v = 0$. We sometimes use \underline{u} to denote v .

In the $u, v, \theta^1, \dots, \theta^n$ coordinates the Minkowski metric takes the form $-4dudv + r^2 d\sigma_{n-1}^2$. Thus, $\mathbf{g}_{uv} = -2$, $\mathbf{g}^{uv} = -\frac{1}{2}$. The wave operator takes the form,

$$\square\phi = \mathbf{g}^{\alpha\beta}\mathbf{D}_\alpha\mathbf{D}_\beta\phi = -\partial_u\partial_v\phi + \frac{n-1}{r}\partial_r\phi + \Delta_{n-1}\phi.$$

² This makes them important in deriving energy estimates.

The standard null pair is given by

$$L = \partial_t + \partial_r = \partial_v, \quad \underline{L} = \partial_t - \partial_r = \partial_u.$$

The corresponding horizontal structure is, of course, integrable with surfaces of integrability given by the spheres $S_{t,r}$.

Recall that the Minkowski space-time \mathbb{R}^{n+1} is equipped with a family of Killing and conformal Killing vector fields, the translations $\mathbf{T}_\mu = \partial_\mu$, Lorentz rotations $\mathbf{L}_{\mu\nu} = x_\mu \partial_\nu - x_\nu \partial_\mu$, scaling $\mathbf{S} = t\partial_t + x^i \partial_i$ and the inverted translations $\mathbf{K}_\mu = -2x_\mu \mathbf{S} + \langle x, x \rangle \partial_\mu$.

The Killing vector fields \mathbf{T}_μ and $\mathbf{L}_{\mu\nu}$ commute with \square while \mathbf{S} preserves the space of solutions in the sense that $\square\phi = 0$ implies $\square\mathbf{S}\phi = 0$ as $[\square, \mathbf{S}] = 2\square$. One can split the operators $\mathbf{L}_{\mu\nu}$ into the angular rotation operators $^{(ij)}\mathbf{O} = x_i \partial_j - x_j \partial_i$ and the boosts $^{(i)}\mathbf{L} = x_i \partial_t + t \partial_i$, for $i, j, k = 1, \dots, n$.

A.2.3 Basic Conservation Laws in Minkowski space

The starting point is the pointwise conservation law

$$\mathbf{D}^\mu(\mathbf{Q}_{\mu\nu} X^\nu) = fX(\phi). \quad (\text{A.2.2})$$

To derive an energy type inequality we integrate (A.2.2) on a domain of dependence \mathcal{D} , as defined below.

Definition A.2.2. *Given a domain $\Sigma_0 \subset \{t = t_0\}$, $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}(\Sigma_0) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is a domain of dependence for Σ_0 if for every $p \in \mathcal{D}$, denoting by $C^-(p)$, the past line cone through p , we have $C^-(p) \cap \{t > t_0\} \subset \mathcal{D}$.*

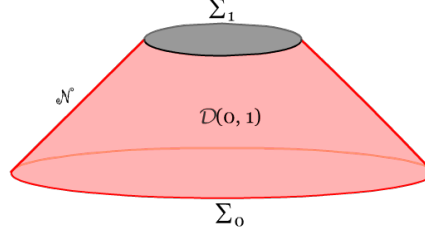
We consider below the following examples of bounded domains of dependence \mathcal{D} with boundary $\partial\mathcal{D} = \partial^+\mathcal{D} \cup \Sigma_0$.

- S. The future boundary $\partial\mathcal{D}^+$ is strictly space-like, i.e. the future unit normal N to it is timelike.
- C. The domain \mathcal{D} (see Figure A.1) given, for $0 < t_1 < R$,

$$\mathcal{D} = \{|x - x_0| < R - t\} \cap \{t \geq 0\} \cap \{t \leq t_1\}$$

whose future boundary is given by $\mathcal{D}^+ = \mathcal{N} \cap \{t = t_1\}$, with null boundary $\mathcal{N} = \{|x - x_0| = R - t\} \cap \{t \geq 0\} \cap \{t \leq t_1\}$

Figure A.1: Causal domain (domain of dependence) \mathcal{D} with incoming null boundary \mathcal{N} and space-like boundaries Σ_0, Σ_1 .



Lemma A.2.3 (Divergence lemma in \mathbb{R}^{1+n}). *Integrating the divergence equation (A.2.2) on a domain \mathcal{D} we derive*

1. *For a spacelike domain of type (S) we have*

$$\int_{\Sigma_1} P \cdot N = \int_{\Sigma_1} P \cdot T - \int_{\mathcal{D}} F$$

2. *For a causal domain of type (T) we have, with³ $L = -\partial^\beta u \partial_\beta$, i.e. $\underline{L}^\beta = -\partial^\beta \underline{u}$,*

$$\int_{\Sigma_1} P \cdot T + \int_{\mathcal{N}} P \cdot \underline{L} = \int_{\Sigma_0} P \cdot T - \int_{\mathcal{D}} F$$

where,

$$\int_{\mathcal{N}} f = \int_0^{t_1} \int_{|x-x_0| \leq R-t} f(t, x) d\sigma. \quad (\text{A.2.3})$$

Proof. In the spacelike case it follows directly from Lemma A.1.12. Otherwise it requires a simple adaptation. \square

Corollary A.2.4. *Given any solution of $\square\phi = 0$ and X Killing we have the conservation law.*

$$\int_{\Sigma_1} Q(X, T) + \int_{\mathcal{N}} Q(X, \underline{L}) = \int_{\Sigma_0} Q(X, T)$$

In the particular case⁴ when $X = T$ we deduce the classical conservation of energy formula

$$\int_{\Sigma_1} Q(T, T) + \int_{\mathcal{N}} Q(T, \underline{L}) = \int_{\Sigma_0} Q(T, T)$$

³Note that L is future null, i.e. $\mathbf{g}(L, L) = 0$, $\mathbf{g}(L, T) = -1$.

⁴ Note that the only globally time-like Killing vectorfield in Minkowski space \mathbb{R}^{1+n} is $X = \partial_t$.

where $Q(T, T) = \frac{1}{2}(|\partial_t \phi|^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2)$.

Thus, any continuous group of isometries of $(\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{g})$, generated by a Killing vectorfield X , leads to a conservation law.

Remark A.2.5. *The vectorfield $X = \mathbf{T} = \partial_t$ leads to the standard law of conservation of energy in Minkowski space: In the particular case when $X = \mathbf{T}_0 = \partial_t$ we have $^{(X)}\pi = 0$ and, integrating (??) on the space-time slab $[0, T] \times \mathbb{R}^n$ we derive the usual conservation laws,*

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} |\partial \phi|^2 = \int_{\Sigma_0} |\partial \phi|^2, \quad (\text{A.2.4})$$

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{N}^+[0, t]} |\overline{D}\phi| + \int_{\Sigma_t \cap \mathcal{N}^+} |\partial \phi| = \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{N}^+} |\partial \phi|^2 \quad (\text{A.2.5})$$

with $|\partial \phi|^2 := |\partial_t \phi|^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2$ and $|\overline{D}\phi|^2 = |L\phi|^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2 = |L\phi|^2 + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} |e_a \phi|^2$. Here $(e_a)_{a=1, \dots, n-1}$ denote unit vectors at $p \in H$ tangent to H and the corresponding time slice passing through p .

Each coordinate vectorfield $X = \partial_i$ leads to conservation of linear momentum and $X = O_{ij} = x_i \partial_j - x_j \partial_i$ leads to conservation of angular momentum.

A.2.4 Vectorfield method and pointwise decay in Minkowski space

We denote by $E[\phi](t)$ the standard energy norm $E[\phi](t) = \int_{\Sigma_t} |\partial \phi|^2$. We introduce the generalized energy norms:

$$E_k[\phi] = \sum_{X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_j}} E[X_{i_1} X_{i_2} \dots X_{i_j} \phi] \quad (\text{A.2.6})$$

with the sum taken over $0 \leq j \leq k$ and over all Killing vector fields $\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{L}_{\mu\nu}$ as well as the scaling vector field \mathbf{S} . The crucial point of the commuting vectorfield method is that the quantities E_k , $k \geq 1$ are conserved by solutions to $\square \phi = 0$. Therefore, if,

$$\sum_{0 \leq k \leq s} \int (1 + |x|)^{2k} \left(|\nabla^{k+1} f(x)|^2 + |\nabla^k g(x)|^2 \right) dx \leq C_s < \infty. \quad (\text{A.2.7})$$

then for all t , $E_s[\phi](t) \leq C_s$. The desired decay estimates can now be derived from the following global version of the Sobolev inequalities (see [Kl-vect1], [Kl-vect2]):

Proposition A.2.6 (Global Sobolev). *Let ϕ be an arbitrary function in R^{n+1} such that $E_s[\phi]$ is finite for some integer $s > \frac{n}{2}$. Then, for $t \geq 0$,*

$$|\partial\phi(t, x)| \lesssim (1+t+|x|)^{-\frac{n-1}{2}} (1+|t-|x||)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \sup_{0 \leq t' \leq t} E_s[\phi](t') \quad (\text{A.2.8})$$

for all $t > 0$. Therefore if the data f, g satisfy A.2.7, with $s > \frac{n}{2}$, then for all $t \geq 0$,

$$|\partial\phi(t, x)| \lesssim \frac{1}{(1+t+|x|)^{\frac{n-1}{2}} (1+|t-|x||)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad (\text{A.2.9})$$

Moreover, relative to the null frame $L_+ = \partial_t + \partial_r$, $L_- = \partial_t - \partial_r$, $(e_a)_{a=1, \dots, n-1}$

$$\begin{aligned} |(L_+, e_a)(\partial\phi)(t, x)| &\lesssim \frac{1}{(1+t+|x|)^{\frac{n+1}{2}} (1+|t-|x||)^{\frac{1}{2}}} \\ |L_-(\partial\phi)(t, x)| &\lesssim \frac{1}{(1+t+|x|)^{\frac{n-1}{2}} (1+|t-|x||)^{\frac{3}{2}}} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.10})$$

and similarly for higher derivatives.

A.2.5 Global conformal energy identity

We now apply Corollary A.1.11 to the case of Minkowski space and $X = \mathbf{K}_0 = (t^2 + |x|^2)\partial_t + 2tx^i\partial_i$ with $\Omega = 4t$. Thus,

$$P_0 = \mathcal{Q}(\mathbf{K}_0, \mathbf{T}_0) + (n-1)t\phi\partial_t\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2.$$

Proposition A.2.7. *The following identity holds in any dimension $n \geq 1$.*

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 = \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma_t} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + 2(t^2 + |x|^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2) \quad (\text{A.2.11})$$

where $L = \partial_t + \partial_r$, $\underline{L} = \partial_t - \partial_r$, $L' = L + (n-1)\underline{u}^{-1}$, $\underline{L}' = \underline{L} + (n-1)u^{-1}$, $u = t - r$ and $\underline{u} = t + r$. Moreover if $n \geq 3$ can prove the following lower bound,

$$c^{-1} \int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 \geq c \int_{\Sigma_t} (\underline{u}^2 |L\phi|^2 + 2(t^2 + |x|^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}\phi|^2 + \phi^2) \quad (\text{A.2.12})$$

for some $c > 0$.

Proof. We review the proof below for the sake of completeness. First observe that, $\mathcal{Q}_{LL} = \mathcal{Q}(L, L) = L(\phi)^2$, $\mathcal{Q}_{L\underline{L}} = \mathcal{Q}(L, \underline{L}) = |\nabla\phi|^2$, $\mathcal{Q}_{\underline{L}\underline{L}} = \mathcal{Q}(\underline{L}, \underline{L}) = L(\phi)^2$ and that $\mathbf{K}_0 = \frac{1}{2}(\underline{u}^2 L + u^2 \underline{L})$, $\mathbf{T}_0 = \partial_t = \frac{1}{2}(L + \underline{L})$ and $\mathcal{S} = \frac{1}{2}(\underline{u}L + u\underline{L})$. For convenience we also introduce the vectorfield $\underline{\mathcal{S}} = \frac{1}{2}(\underline{u}L - u\underline{L}) = r\partial_t + t\partial_r$. Thus,

$$\mathcal{Q}(\mathbf{K}_0, \mathbf{T}_0) = \frac{1}{4} \left(\underline{u}^2 L(\phi)^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 \underline{L}(\phi)^2 \right)$$

and,

$$\begin{aligned} P_0 &= \frac{1}{4} \left(\underline{u}^2 (L\phi)^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 (\underline{L}\phi)^2 \right) + (n-1)t\partial_t\phi\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left((\mathcal{S}\phi)^2 + (\underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi)^2 + 2^{-1}(u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 \right) + (n-1)t\partial_t\phi\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \end{aligned}$$

One then proceeds by a simple integration by parts procedure. Writing $t\partial_t = \mathbf{S} - r\partial_r$ we derive:

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} t\phi\partial_t\phi = \int_{\Sigma_t} (\mathcal{S}\phi - r\partial_r\phi) \cdot \phi = \int_{\Sigma_t} \mathcal{S}\phi \cdot \phi + \frac{n}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} \phi^2 \quad (\text{A.2.13})$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 &= \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{1}{2} \left((\mathcal{S}\phi)^2 + (\underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi)^2 + 2^{-1}(u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + (n-1)\mathcal{S}\phi \cdot \phi + \frac{(n-1)^2}{2}\phi^2 \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} \left((\mathcal{S}\phi + (n-1)\phi)^2 + (\underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2}(u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma_t} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2) \end{aligned}$$

which establishes (A.2.11).

To prove (A.2.12) we use, in addition to (A.2.13), the following modification,

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} t\partial_t\phi = \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{t}{r} \underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi - \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{t^2}{2r} \partial_r(\phi^2) = \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{t}{r} \underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi + \frac{n-2}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{t^2}{r^2} \phi^2 \quad (\text{A.2.14})$$

Using positive constants A, B , $A + B = n - 1$, we write,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_t} (n-1)t\phi\partial_t\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 &= A \int_{\Sigma_t} t\phi\partial_t\phi + B \int_{\Sigma_t} t\phi\partial_t\phi - \int_{\Sigma_t} \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_t} \left(A\mathcal{S}\phi \cdot \phi + B\frac{t}{r}\underline{\mathcal{S}}\phi \cdot \phi + \left(A\frac{n}{2} - \frac{n-1}{2}\right)\phi^2 + B\frac{n-2}{2}\frac{t^2}{r^2}\phi^2 \right) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} \left((S\phi)^2 + 2A\phi \cdot S\phi + (An - (n-1))\phi^2 \right) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 \\ &+ \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} \left((\underline{S}\phi)^2 + 2A\phi \cdot \underline{S}\phi + B(n-2)\frac{t^2}{r^2}\phi^2 \right) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now observe that, if $0 < A < (n-1)$ and $0 < B < n-2$ we can find $c_1, c_2 > 0$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} (S\phi)^2 + 2A\phi \cdot S\phi + (An - (n-1))\phi^2 &\geq c_1((S\phi)^2 + \phi^2) \\ (\underline{S}\phi)^2 + 2A\phi \cdot \underline{S}\phi + B(n-2)\frac{t^2}{r^2}\phi^2 &\geq c_2((\underline{S}\phi)^2 + \frac{t^2}{r^2}\phi^2) \end{aligned}$$

If $n \geq 3$ one can find A, B verifying $0 < A < (n-1)$, $0 < B < n-2$ such that $A + B = n-1$. Therefore taking c the minimum of c_1, c_2 we derive,

$$\begin{aligned} c^{-1} \left(\int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 \right) &\geq \int_{\Sigma_t} (|S(\phi)|^2 + |\underline{S}(\phi)|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\phi^2) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_t} (\underline{u}^2 |L(\phi)|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}(\phi)|^2 + \phi^2) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, for some other $c > 0$,

$$c^{-1} \int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 \geq \int_{\Sigma_t} (\underline{u}^2 |L(\phi)|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}(\phi)|^2 + 2(t^2 + |x|^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \phi^2)$$

as desired. \square

Remark A.2.8. *The second part of the Proposition is typical to the use of Hardy type inequalities to estimate the lower order term in ϕ .*

As a corollary we have the following

Corollary A.2.9. *If $\square\phi = 0$, $\phi(0) = f$, $\partial_t\phi(0) = g$*

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} \underline{u}^2 |L'(\phi)|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'(\phi)|^2 + (t^2 + r^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \phi^2 \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_0} |f|^2 + |x|^2 |\nabla f|^2 + |x|^2 |g|^2$$

and $n \geq 3$ we have,

$$\int_{\Sigma_t} \underline{u}^2 |L(\phi)|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}(\phi)|^2 + (t^2 + r^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \phi^2 \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_0} |f|^2 + |x|^2 |\nabla f|^2 + |x|^2 |g|^2$$

A.2.6 Null Conformal energy

Proposition A.2.10. *Consider the domain \mathcal{D} to be the complement of the causal future of $D_R = \{|x| \leq R\}$ in \mathbb{R}_+^{1+n} , for some $R > 0$. Denote by $\mathcal{D}(\tau)$ the intersection of \mathcal{D} with the time slab $0 \leq t \leq \tau$. Denote by $\mathcal{H}^+[0, \tau]$ the future boundary of \mathcal{D} intersected with the same time slab. Also denote by $\Sigma(\tau)$ the spacelike hypersurface $t = \tau$.*

The following estimate holds true.

$$C_+[\phi](\tau) + \int_{\partial\mathcal{H}^+[0, \tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u}L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2} u^2 |\nabla\phi|^2 \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{H}^+} |f|^2 + |x|^2 |\nabla f|^2 + |x|^2 |g|^2$$

where $C_+[\phi](\tau)$ is the conformal energy restricted to $\Sigma^+(\tau) = \Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{D}$

$$C_+[\phi](\tau) = \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2).$$

In particular

$$\int_{\partial\mathcal{H}^+[0, \tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u}L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2} u^2 |\nabla\phi|^2 \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{H}^+} |f|^2 + |x|^2 |\nabla f|^2 + |x|^2 |g|^2$$

Proof. We first consider the case when \mathcal{H}^+ is the complement . We apply formula (A.2.15) to $X = \mathbf{K}_0$.

$$\int_{\partial\mathcal{H}^+[0, \tau]} \mathbf{m}(P, L) + \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0 = \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0 \quad (\text{A.2.15})$$

where $L = \partial_t + \partial_r$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{m}(P, L) &= \mathcal{Q}(\mathbf{K}_0, L) + (n-1)t\phi L\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \\ P_0 = \mathbf{m}(P, \mathbf{T}_0) &= \mathcal{Q}(\mathbf{K}_0, \mathbf{T}_0) + (n-1)t\phi\partial_t\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2. \end{aligned}$$

The integral on \mathcal{H} is defined in the same way as in A.2.3.

We consider first the integral $\int_{\Sigma_\tau \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0$ which can be treated exactly as $\int_{\Sigma_t} P_0$ in the previous subsection. The only modification we need to make are in the integration by parts formulas (A.2.13) and (A.2.14) where now need to take into account the boundary terms. Thus (A.2.13) becomes,

$$\int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} t\phi\partial_t\phi = \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} \mathcal{S}\phi \cdot \phi + \frac{n}{2} \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} \phi^2 + \frac{1}{2} \int_{S_{\tau, R}} r\phi^2 d\sigma$$

where $S_{\tau,R}$ is the ball of radius R on $\Sigma(\tau)$ and $d\sigma$ its volume form. Thus, proceeding as in the derivation of (A.2.11) we deduce,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0 &= \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma(\tau) \cap \mathcal{H}^+} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2) \\ &+ \frac{n-1}{2} \int_{S_{\tau,R}} r \phi^2 d\sigma \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.2.16})$$

We now consider the null boundary integral,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \mathbf{m}(P, L) &= \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} (\mathcal{Q}(\mathbf{K}_0, L) + (n-1)t\phi L\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2) d\sigma \\ &= \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u}^2 L(\phi)^2 + u^2 |\nabla \phi|^2) + (n-1)t\phi L\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \\ &= J + \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} u^2 |\nabla \phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now, by a simple integration by parts⁵ we deduce,

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} |x| \phi L\phi = -\frac{n}{2} \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \phi^2 + \frac{1}{2} \int_{S_{\tau,R}} |x| \phi^2$$

On the other hand by a simple calculation, recalling that $\underline{u} = t + r$,

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} \underline{u}^2 (L\phi)^2 + (n-1)t\phi L\phi - \frac{n-1}{2}\phi^2 \\ &= \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u} L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 - \frac{n-1}{2} \int_{S_{\tau,R}} |x| \phi^2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \mathbf{m}(P, L) = \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u} L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2} u^2 |\nabla \phi|^2 - \frac{n-1}{2} \int_{S_{\tau,R}} |x| \phi^2$$

Recalling (A.2.16) and (A.2.15) we deduce,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \mathbf{m}(P, L) + \int_{\Sigma_\tau \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0 &= \int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} (\underline{u} L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2} u^2 |\nabla \phi|^2 \\ &+ \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma_\tau \cap \mathcal{H}^+} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla \phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2) \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0. \end{aligned}$$

⁵ $\int_{\partial \mathcal{H}^+(0,\tau)} \phi^2 = \int_0^\tau ds \int_{|y|=1} \phi^2(s, (R+s)y) (R+s)^{n-1} d\sigma_y = \frac{1}{n} \int_{|y|=1} d\sigma_y \int_0^\tau \tau \phi^2 \frac{d}{ds} (R+s)^n ds$
 $= -\frac{1}{n} \int_{|y|=1} d\sigma_y \int_0^\tau \frac{d}{ds} \phi^2 (R+s)^n ds + \frac{1}{n} \int_{|y|=1} (R+\tau)^n \phi^2(t, (R+\tau)y) d\sigma_y = -\frac{2}{n} \int_0^\tau ds \int_{|x|=s+R} |x| \phi L\phi d\sigma_x +$
 $\frac{1}{n} \int_{|x|=\tau+R} |x| \phi^2(t, x) d\sigma_x = -\frac{2}{n} \int_{\mathcal{H}^+(0,\tau)} |x| \phi L\phi + \frac{1}{n} \int_{S_{\tau,R}} |x| \phi^2.$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\partial\mathcal{H}^+[0,\tau]} \frac{1}{2} \left((\underline{u}L\phi - (n-1)\phi)^2 + u^2 |\nabla\phi|^2 - (n-1)\phi^2 \right) \\ & + \frac{1}{4} \int_{\Sigma_\tau \cap \mathcal{H}^+} (\underline{u}^2 |L'\phi|^2 + (u^2 + \underline{u}^2) |\nabla\phi|^2 + u^2 |\underline{L}'\phi|^2) = \int_{\Sigma_0 \cap \mathcal{H}^+} P_0 \end{aligned}$$

from which the desire estimate easily follows. \square

A.3 Other integral estimates

A.3.1 Morawetz Estimates

Besides the standard Killing and conformal Killing vectorfields of Minkowski space we encounter other useful vectorfields which lead to bulk estimates. The primary example is the so called Morawetz estimate.

Lemma A.3.1. *Consider the vectorfields $Y = \partial_r$ and $X = f(r)\partial_r$ in Minkowski space \mathcal{R}^{1+n} .*

1. *The deformation tensor of the vectorfield $Y = \partial_r$ is given by:*

$${}^{(Y)}\pi_{00} = {}^{(Y)}\pi_{0i} = 0, \quad {}^{(Y)}\pi_{ij} = \frac{2}{r}(\delta_{ij} - \frac{x_i x_j}{|x|^2}), \quad i, j = 1, \dots, n, \quad \text{tr}^{(Y)}\pi = \frac{2(n-1)}{r}.$$

or, relative to a null frame $e_1, e_2, e_3 = \underline{L} = \partial_u, e_4 = L = \partial_v$ the only nonvanishing components are,

$${}^{(Y)}\pi_{ab} = \frac{2}{r}\delta_{ab}, \quad a, b = 1, 2, \dots, n-1.$$

2. *The only nonvanishing components of deformation tensor of the vectorfield $X = f(r)Y = f(r)\partial_r$ are given by*

$${}^{(X)}\pi_{rr} = 2f'(r), \quad {}^{(X)}\pi_{ab} = \frac{2f(r)}{r}\delta_{ab}, \quad \text{tr}^{(X)}\pi = 2(f'(r) + \frac{n-1}{r}f)$$

Proof. ${}^{(Y)}\pi$ can be easily calculated either in cartesian coordinates, since $\partial_r = \frac{x^i}{|x|}\partial_i$ or in polar coordinates. To calculate ${}^{(X)}\pi$ note that given $X = fY$ we have,

$${}^{(X)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} = {}^{(fY)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} = f {}^{(Y)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} + \mathbf{D}_\alpha f Y_\beta + \mathbf{D}_\beta f Y_\alpha, \quad \text{tr}^{(X)}\pi = \text{tr}^{(fY)}\pi = f \text{tr}^{(Y)}\pi + 2Y(f)$$

Note also that the deformation tensor of L is the same as that of $Y = \partial_r$. Hence,

$${}^{(V)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} = {}^{(fL)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} = f {}^{(L)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} + \mathbf{D}_\alpha f L_\beta + \mathbf{D}_\beta f L_\alpha = f {}^{(Y)}\pi_{\alpha\beta} + \mathbf{D}_\alpha f L_\beta + \mathbf{D}_\beta f L_\alpha$$

Hence,

$${}^{(V)}\pi_{33} = 4f'(r), \quad {}^{(V)}\pi_{34} = -2f'(r), \quad {}^{(V)}\pi_{44} = {}^{(V)}\pi_{3a} = {}^{(V)}\pi_{4a} = 0, \quad {}^{(V)}\pi_{ab} = 2r^{-1}f(r)\delta_{ab}$$

as desired. \square

We now specialize to $n = 3$ and calculate the term,

$$\square(r^{-1}f(r)) = r^{-1}f''(r) - 4\pi f(r)\delta_0 - 2r^{-2}f'(r)$$

We deduce the following,

Proposition A.3.2. *Given $X = f(r)\partial_r$ and $w = \frac{2}{r}f(r)$, the 1-form in \mathbb{R}^{1+3} ,*

$$P_\mu[X, w, 0] = \mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu}X^\nu + \frac{1}{2}w\phi\partial_\mu\phi - \frac{1}{4}\partial_\mu w\phi^2$$

verifies the divergence identity:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu &= \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_t\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_r\phi)^2 + (r^{-1}f - \frac{1}{2}f'(r))|\nabla\phi|^2 \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2r}f''(r)\phi^2 + f(r)(\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi \end{aligned} \tag{A.3.1}$$

Proof. According to Lemma A.1.10 we have,

$$\mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu = (X(\phi) + \frac{1}{2}w\phi)\square\phi + \frac{1}{2}\mathcal{Q}_{\mu\nu}{}^{(X)}\pi^{\mu\nu} - \frac{1}{4}\square w\phi^2 + \frac{1}{2}w\mathbf{g}(d\phi, d\phi).$$

Using Lemma A.3.1 and $\square w = 2\square(r^{-1}f(r)) = 2r^{-1}f''(r) - 8\pi f(r)\delta_0 - 4r^{-2}f'$ we then derive

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu &= \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_t\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_r\phi)^2 + (r^{-1}f - \frac{1}{2}f'(r))|\nabla\phi|^2 - (\frac{1}{2r}f''(r) - r^{-2}f')\phi^2 \\ &\quad + \frac{8}{\pi}\phi^2\delta_0 + f(r)(\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi \end{aligned} \tag{A.3.2}$$

\square

Proposition A.3.3. *Let $\mathcal{D} = \mathcal{D}(\tau) = \{(t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^{1+n} : x \in \mathbb{R}^3, 0 \leq t \leq \tau\}$ For every $0 < \delta < 1$, (with a constant dependent of δ), we have*

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}} (1+r)^{-1-\delta} (|\partial\phi|^2 + r^{-2}|\phi|^2) \lesssim \mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \int_{\mathcal{D}_\tau} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2$$

Proof. Choose $f(r) = 1 - \frac{1}{(1+r)^\delta}$ to the identity (A.3.2). Observe that

$$f'(r) = \frac{\delta}{(1+r)^{1+\delta}}, \quad f''(r) = -\frac{\delta(1+\delta)}{(1+r)^{2+\delta}}, \quad \frac{f(r)}{r} \geq \frac{\delta}{(1+r)^{1+\delta}} = f'(r)$$

and,

$$r^{-1}f, f'(r) \leq (1+r)^{-1-\delta}, \quad |f''(r)| \lesssim (1+r)^{-2-\delta}, \quad |f'''(r)| \lesssim (1+r)^{-3-\delta}$$

Finally

$$-\frac{1}{2r}f''(r) + r^{-2}f' = \frac{1}{2r} \frac{\delta(1+\delta)}{(1+r)^{2+\delta}} + r^{-2} \frac{\delta}{(1+r)^{1+\delta}} \geq \frac{1}{2r} \frac{\delta(1+\delta)}{(1+r)^{2+\delta}}$$

Also, since $f(0) = 0$ and $\square(r^{-1}f(r)) = 2r^{-1}f''(r)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu &= \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_t\phi)^2 + \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\partial_r\phi)^2 + (r^{-1}f - \frac{1}{2}f'(r))|\nabla\phi|^2 - \frac{1}{2r}f''(r)\phi^2 \\ &\quad + f(r)(\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi. \end{aligned}$$

We deduce

$$D^\mu P_\mu \geq f(\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi + \frac{1}{2r}f|\nabla\phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2}f'(|\partial_r\phi|^2 + |\partial_t\phi|^2) + \frac{1}{2r} \frac{\delta(1+\delta)}{(1+r)^{2+\delta}}|\phi|^2$$

Using the divergence theorem and the positivity of f, f' we deduce

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}} (1+r)^{-1-\delta}(|\partial\phi|^2 + r^{-2}|\phi|^2) \lesssim |E[\phi](\tau) - E[\phi](0)| + \int_{\mathcal{D}} (1+r)^{1+\delta}|\square\phi|^2$$

The result then follows by making use of conservation of energy estimate, i.e.

$$E[\phi](\tau) \leq E[\phi](0) + \int_{\mathcal{D}} |\square\phi|^2.$$

□

Remark A.3.4. Choosing $f = 1$ in (A.3.2) we derive

$$\mathbf{D}^\mu P_\mu = r^{-1}|\nabla\phi|^2 + \frac{8}{\pi}\phi^2\delta_0 + (\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi.$$

Thus, after integration,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau)} r^{-1}|\nabla\phi|^2 + 8\pi \int_0^\tau |\phi|^2 &= \int_{\Sigma_0} P_0 - \int_{\Sigma_t} P_0 - \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau)} (\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi)\square\phi \\ &\lesssim 2E(0) + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau)} |\partial_r\phi + r^{-1}\phi||\square\phi|. \end{aligned}$$

A.3.2 r^p Weighted Flux Estimates

In this section we consider domains $\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)$ as in the picture below.

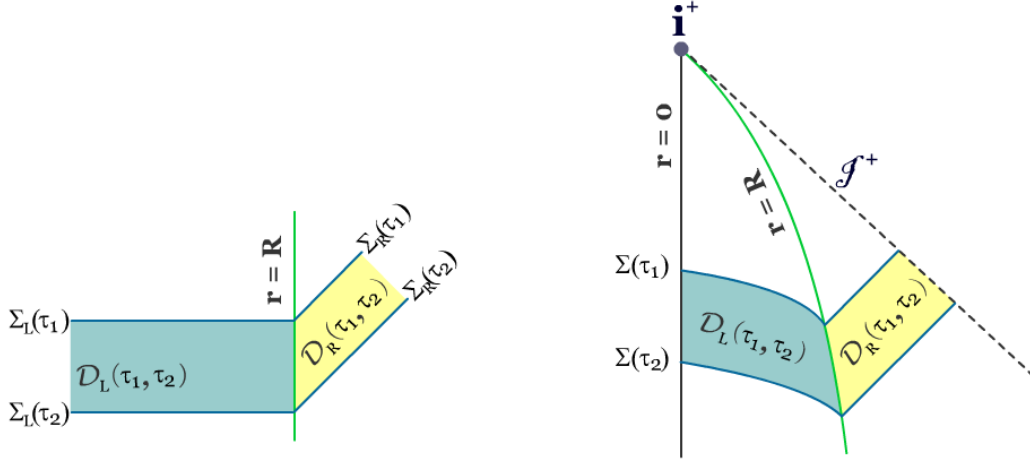


Figure A.2: small Causal Domains $\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)$ with past and future boundaries $\Sigma(\tau_1), \Sigma(\tau_2)$ consisting of the two sides Σ_L , spacelike and Σ_R null.

Theorem A.3.5. *The following weighted flux inequalities hold true, for $0 \leq p \leq 2$:*

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + \int \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} (p(\hat{L}\phi)^2 + (2-p)|\nabla\phi|^2) + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p |\nabla\phi|^2 \\ & \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + R^p \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) + I_{p+1}[\square\phi](\tau_1, \tau_2) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.3.3})$$

where,

$$\hat{L}\phi := L\phi + \frac{1}{r}\phi = (\partial_t + \partial_r)\phi + \frac{1}{r}\phi.$$

and,

$$I_{p+1}[\square\phi](\tau_1, \tau_2) := \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p+1} |\square\phi|^2 + R^p \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2$$

Remark A.3.6. *In reality the proof gives the estimate,*

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + \int \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} (p(\hat{L}\phi)^2 + (2-p)|\nabla\phi|^2) + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p |\nabla\phi|^2 \\ & \lesssim \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + R^p \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) + I_{p+1}[\square\phi](\tau_1, \tau_2) \end{aligned}$$

without making use of the Morawetz integrated decay estimate. We do not expect this to be true in a black hole situation where the integrated decay estimate will have to be used. This would lead to a loss of derivative.

Proof. We make use of the pointwise identities of proposition ??, which we recall below.

$$\text{Div} P = f(r) \widehat{L} \phi \square \phi + (r^{-1} f - \frac{1}{2} f') |\nabla \phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2} f'(r) (\widehat{L} \phi)^2 \quad (\text{A.3.4})$$

where,

$$\begin{aligned} P_\mu[X, w, M] &= Q_{\mu\nu} X^\nu + \frac{1}{2} w \phi \partial_\mu \phi - \frac{1}{4} \partial_\mu w \phi^2 + \frac{1}{4} M_\mu \phi^2 \\ X &= f(r) (\partial_t + \partial_r) = f(r) L, \quad w = \frac{2}{r} f, \quad M = 2r^{-1} f'(r) L \end{aligned}$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned} P \cdot L &= f(r) (\widehat{L} \phi)^2 - \frac{1}{2} r^{-2} \partial_v (r f(r) \phi^2) \\ P \cdot \underline{L} &= f(r) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2} r^{-2} \partial_u (r f(r) \phi^2) \\ P \cdot \partial_t &= \frac{1}{2} f(r) [(\widehat{L} \phi)^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2] - \frac{1}{2} r^{-2} \partial_r (r f(r) \phi^2) \end{aligned}$$

Start with the formula,

$$\int_{\Sigma(\tau_2)} P \cdot \nu + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} P \cdot \nu = \int_{\Sigma(\tau_1)} P \cdot \nu - \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \text{Div} P$$

with $\nu = \partial_t$ along Σ_L and $\nu = L$ along Σ_R . We have,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma(\tau)} P \cdot \nu &= \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} P \cdot \partial_t + \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} P \cdot L \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} \frac{1}{2} f(r) [(\widehat{L} \phi)^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2] - \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} f(r) (\widehat{L} \phi)^2 \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} r^{-2} \partial_r (r f(r) \phi^2) - \frac{1}{2} \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} r^{-2} \partial_v (r f(r) \phi^2) \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} \frac{1}{2} f(r) [(\widehat{L} \phi)^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2] + \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} f(r) (\widehat{L} \phi)^2 - \frac{1}{2} \lim_{V \rightarrow \infty} \int_{S_{u_\tau, V}} r^{-1} f(r) \phi^2 \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} P \cdot \nu &= \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} P \cdot \underline{L} = \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} f(r) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{-2} \partial_u (r f(r) \phi^2) \\ &= \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} f(r) |\nabla \phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2} \lim_{V \rightarrow \infty} \int_{S_{u_{\tau_2}, V}} r^{-1} f(r) \phi^2 - \frac{1}{2} \lim_{V \rightarrow \infty} \int_{S_{u_{\tau_1}, V}} r^{-1} f(r) \phi^2 \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma(\tau_2)} P \cdot \nu + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} P \cdot \nu - \int_{\Sigma(\tau_1)} P \cdot \nu &= \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} f(r)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau_2)} \frac{1}{2}f(r) \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] \\ &\quad - \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} f(r)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 - \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau_1)} \frac{1}{2}f(r) \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

and we derive,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} f(r)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} f(r)|\nabla\phi|^2 + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \text{Div}P &= \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} f(r)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \\ &\quad + \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau_1)} \frac{1}{2}f(r) \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] \\ &\quad - \int_{\Sigma(\tau_2)} \frac{1}{2}f(r) \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \text{Div}P = \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \left(r^{-1}f - \frac{1}{2}f' \right) |\nabla\phi|^2 + \frac{1}{2}f'(r)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} f(r)\widehat{L}\phi\Box\phi$$

for $f = r^p$,

$$\int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} \text{Div}P = \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} \left[\frac{1}{2}(2-p)|\nabla\phi|^2 + \frac{p}{2}(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \right] + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p\widehat{L}\phi\Box\phi$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} r^p(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p|\nabla\phi|^2 + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} \left[\frac{1}{2}(2-p)|\nabla\phi|^2 + \frac{p}{2}(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \right] \\ &= \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} r^p(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 + \text{Err} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\text{Err} = \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau_1)} \frac{1}{2}r^p \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] - \int_{\Sigma(\tau_2)} \frac{1}{2}r^p \left[(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p\widehat{L}\phi\Box\phi$$

Clearly,

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{Err}| &\lesssim R^p \left(\mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) + \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_2) \right) + \epsilon \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} |\widehat{L}\phi|^2 + \epsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p+1} |\Box\phi|^2 \\ &\lesssim 2R^p \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) + \epsilon \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} |\widehat{L}\phi|^2 + \epsilon^{-1} \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p+1} |\Box\phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

We deduce, for $\epsilon = \frac{p}{4}$,

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} r^p (\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \int_{\mathcal{I}^+(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^p |\nabla \phi|^2 + \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} \left[\frac{1}{2}(2-p)|\nabla \phi|^2 + \left(\frac{p}{4}\right)(\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \right] \\ & \leq 2R^p \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) + \frac{4}{p} \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p+1} |\square \phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

□

TO BE REVIEWED

A.3.3 Decay of the Energy Flux

Calculus Lemmas

We start with a few simple remarks.

Lemma A.3.7. *Let $f : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a C^1 non-negative function verifying, for all $0 \leq t_1 \leq t_2$,*

$$f(t_2) + A \int_{t_1}^{t_2} f(s) ds \leq f(t_1)$$

Then, for all $0 \leq t$,

$$f(t) \leq f(0)e^{-At}$$

Proof. Consider $H(t) := f(t) + A \int_0^t f(s) ds$. Clearly $H(t_2) \leq H(t_1)$ for all $0 \leq t_1 \leq t_2$. Hence $H'(t) \leq 0$ and therefore,

$$e^{-At} \frac{d}{dt} (e^{At} f(t)) = f'(t) + Af(t) \leq 0.$$

□

Lemma A.3.8. *Consider a sequence of continuous functions $f_k : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that,*

$$0 \leq f_0(t) \leq \dots \leq f_k(t)$$

and, for all $\tau_1 \leq \tau_2 \in [0, T]$ and all $1 \leq i \leq k$,

$$f_i(\tau_2) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} f_{i-1}(s) ds \leq f_i(\tau_1) \tag{A.3.5}$$

Then,

$$f_0(T) \leq (T/k)^{-k} f_k(0)$$

Proof. We divide $[0, T]$ in k subintervals of length T/k , i.e. $t_0 = 0 < t_1 \dots < t_k = T$. In each interval $I_j = [t_{j-1}, t_j]$ we make use of (A.3.5) i.e.,

$$f_i(t) + \int_{t_{j-1}}^t f_{i-1}(s) ds \leq f_i(t_{j-1}), \quad \forall t \in I_j = [t_{j-1}, t_j]$$

In particular,

$$\int_{I_j} f_{i-1}(s) ds \leq f_i(t_{j-1})$$

and therefore, by the mean value theorem. there exists $\tau \in I_j$ such that,

$$f_{i-1}(\tau) = \frac{1}{|I_j|} \int_{I_j} f_{i-1}(s) ds \leq (T/k)^{-1} f_i(t_{j-1})$$

On the other hand, according to (A.3.5) applied to f_{i-1} we have, since $\tau \leq t_j$,

$$f_{i-1}(t_j) \leq f_{i-1}(\tau)$$

We deduce,

$$f_{i-1}(t_j) \leq (T/k)^{-1} f_i(t_{j-1}) \tag{A.3.6}$$

Consequently,

$$f_0(T) = f_0(t_k) \leq (T/k)^{-1} f_1(t_{k-1}) \leq (T/k)^{-2} f_2(t_{k-2}) \leq \dots \leq (T/k)^{-k} f_k(t_0) = (T/k)^{-k} f_k(0)$$

as desired. □

We now generalize the lemma a bit to allow for inhomogeneities.

Proposition A.3.9. *Consider a sequence of continuous functions $f_k : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that,*

$$0 \leq f_0(t) \leq \dots \leq f_k(t)$$

and, for all $\tau_1 \leq \tau_2 \in [0, T]$, $1 \leq i \leq k$,

$$f_i(\tau_2) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} f_{i-1}(s)ds \lesssim f_i(\tau_1) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} F_i(s)ds \quad (\text{A.3.7})$$

where F_i are given non-negative continuous functions in $[0, T]$. Then,

$$f_0(T) \lesssim T^{-k} \left[f_k(0) + \sum_{0 \leq i \leq k} \sup_{\tau \in [0, T]} \int_{\tau}^T s^{k-i} F_i(s)ds \right] \quad (\text{A.3.8})$$

In fact

$$f_i(\tau_2) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} f_{i-1}(s)ds \lesssim f_i(\tau_1) + f_0(\tau_1) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} F_i(s)ds \quad (\text{A.3.9})$$

Proof. We divide $[0, T]$ in $k+1$ subintervals of length $T/(k+1)$, i.e. $t_0 = 0 < t_1 < t_2 \dots < t_{k+1} = T$. In each interval $I_j = [t_j, t_{j+1}]$ we make use of (A.3.7) i.e.,

$$f_i(t) + \int_{t_j}^t f_{i-1}(s)ds \lesssim f_i(t_j) + \int_{t_j}^t F_i(s)ds, \quad \forall t \in I_j = [t_j, t_{j+1}]$$

In particular,

$$\int_{I_j} f_{i-1}(s)ds \lesssim f_i(t_j) + \int_{I_j} F_i(s)ds$$

and therefore, by the mean value theorem there exists $\tau \in I_j$ such that,

$$f_{i-1}(\tau) = \frac{1}{|I_j|} \int_{I_j} f_{i-1}(s)ds \lesssim (T/(k+1))^{-1} \left[f_i(t_j) + \int_{I_j} F_i(s)ds \right]$$

On the other hand,

$$f_{i-1}(t_{j+1}) + \int_{\tau}^{t_{j+1}} f_{i-2}(s)ds \lesssim f_{i-1}(\tau) + \int_{\tau}^{t_{j+1}} F_{i-1}(s)ds$$

i.e., since all f_i are non-negative,

$$f_{i-1}(t_{j+1}) \lesssim f_{i-1}(\tau) + \int_{\tau}^{t_{j+1}} F_{i-1}(s)ds$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} f_{i-1}(t_{j+1}) &\lesssim \frac{1}{|I_j|} \int_{I_j} f_{i-1}(s) ds \leq (T/(k+1))^{-1} \left[f_i(t_j) + \int_{I_j} F_i(s) ds \right] + \int_{\tau}^{t_{j+1}} F_{i-1}(s) ds \\ &\lesssim (T/(k+1))^{-1} \left[f_i(t_j) + \int_{I_j} F_i(s) ds \right] + \int_{I_j} F_{i-1}(s) ds \end{aligned}$$

Note also that, since $t_j \geq j \frac{k+1}{T}$,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{I_j} F_i(s) ds &= \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} F_i(s) ds \leq t_j^{i-k} \int_{t_j}^{t_{j+1}} s^{k-i} F_i(s) ds \\ &\leq \left[\frac{k+1}{jT} \right]^{k-i} F_i^{(k-i)} \end{aligned}$$

where,

$$F_i^{(k-i)} := \sup_{\tau \in [0, T]} \int_{\tau}^T s^{k-i} F_i(s) ds \quad (\text{A.3.10})$$

Hence,

$$f_{i-1}(t_{j+1}) \lesssim (T/(k+1))^{-1} f_i(t_j) + (T/(k+1))^{-1} \left[\frac{k+1}{jT} \right]^{k-i} F_i^{(k-i)} + \left[\frac{k+1}{jT} \right]^{k-i+1} F_{i-1}^{(k-i+1)}$$

Hence, for all $j \geq 1, i \geq 1$

$$f_{i-1}(t_{j+1}) \lesssim T^{-1} f_i(t_j) + T^{-k} T^{i-1} \left[F_i^{(k-i)} + F_{i-1}^{(k-i+1)} \right] \quad (\text{A.3.11})$$

In particular,

$$f_0(T) = f_0(t_{k+1}) \lesssim (T)^{-1} f_1(t_k) + T^{-k} \left[F_1^{(k-1)} + F_0^{(k)} \right]$$

In the same manner,

$$f_1(t_k) \lesssim T^{-1} f_2(t_{k-1}) + T^{-k+1} \left[F_2^{(k-2)} + F_1^{(k-1)} \right]$$

Therefore,

$$f_0(T) \lesssim T^{-2} f_2(t_{k-1}) + T^{-k} \left[F_2^{(k-2)} + F_1^{(k-1)} + F_0^{(k)} \right]$$

Continuing in the same manner we derive,

$$f_0(T) \lesssim T^{-k} f_k(t_1) + T^{-k} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq k-1} F_i^{(k-i)}$$

or, since,

$$f_k(t_1) \lesssim f_k(0) + \int_{t_0}^{t_1} F_k(s) ds \leq f_k(0) + F_k^{(0)}$$

we derive the desired estimate,

$$f_0(T) \lesssim T^{-k} f_k(0) + T^{-k} \sum_{0 \leq i \leq k} F_i^{(k-i)}$$

□

First Decay Theorem

According to the main estimate of theorem A.3.5, for all $0 \leq p \leq 2$:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_2)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + \int \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p-1} (p(\hat{L}\phi)^2 + (2-p)|\nabla\phi|^2) &\lesssim \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau_1)} r^p (\hat{L}\phi)^2 + R^p \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau_1) \\ &+ I_{p+1}[\square\phi](\tau_1, \tau_2) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.3.12})$$

where, $\hat{L}\phi := L\phi + \frac{1}{r}\phi = (\partial_t + \partial_r)\phi + \frac{1}{r}\phi$ and,

$$I_{p+1}[\square\phi](\tau_1, \tau_2) := \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau_1, \tau_2)} r^{p+1} |\square\phi|^2 + R^p \int_{\mathcal{D}(\tau_1, \tau_2)} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2$$

Let,

$$\begin{aligned} f_i(\tau) &:= \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} |\partial\phi|^2 + \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} r^i |\hat{L}\phi|^2, \quad i = 1, 2, \\ f_0(\tau) &:= \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} |\partial\phi|^2 + \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} \left[|\hat{L}\phi|^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2 \right] \end{aligned}$$

In view of the Hardy inequality,

$$\mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau) \leq f_0(\tau) \lesssim \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau).$$

where, recall,

$$\mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau) = \int_{\Sigma_L(\tau)} |\partial\phi|^2 + \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} |L\phi|^2 + |\nabla\phi|^2$$

We also define,

$$F_p(\tau) := \int_{\Sigma_R(\tau)} r^{p+1} |\square\phi|^2 + R^p \int_{\Sigma(\tau)} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2$$

In view of (A.3.12), for all $p = 1, 2$,

$$f_p(\tau_2) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} f_{p-1}(\tau) d\tau \lesssim f_p(\tau_1) + f_0(\tau_1) + \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} F_p(\tau) d\tau$$

Hence, as a consequence of proposition A.3.9 we deduce, for all $\tau \in [0, T]$,

$$f_0(\tau) \lesssim \tau^{-2} \left[f_2(\tau) + \sum_{0 \leq i \leq 2} \sup_{\tau \in [0, T]} \int_{\tau}^T s^{2-i} F_i(s) ds \right]$$

Definition A.3.10. We introduce the following norms for $\square\phi$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{I}_k[\square\phi](\tau_0, t) &= \sum_{i=0}^k \sup_{\tau \in [\tau_0, t]} \int \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau, t)} (1+\tau)^{k-i} (1+r)^{1+i} |\square\phi|^2 \\ &\quad + \sup_{\tau \in [\tau_0, t]} \int \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau, t)} (1+\tau)^{p-1} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

and, for a fixed $\epsilon > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{I}_k^-[\square\phi](\tau_0, t) &= \sum_{i=0}^k \sup_{\tau \in [\tau_0, t]} \int \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau, t)} (1+\tau)^{k-i} (1+r)^{1+i-\epsilon} |\square\phi|^2 \\ &\quad + \sup_{\tau \in [\tau_0, t]} \int \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(\tau, t)} (1+\tau)^{p-1} (1+r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2 \end{aligned}$$

These considerations prove the first part of the following theorem:

Theorem A.3.11. Assume $R \approx 1$ and initial data supported in $\Sigma_L(0)$.

1. The energy-flux $\mathcal{E}[\phi]$ verifies the decay estimate, for all $0 \leq t \leq T$,

$$\mathcal{E}[\phi](t) \lesssim (1+t)^{-2} [\mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}[\square\phi]] \quad (\text{A.3.13})$$

where,

$$\mathcal{I}_{2,t}[\square\phi] := \mathcal{I}_2[\square\phi](0, t)$$

2. The incoming flux (through the null hypersurface $\mathcal{N}^V(\tau_1, \tau_2) = \{v = V; u_{\tau_1} \leq u \leq u_{\tau_2}\}$)

$$\underline{\mathcal{E}}^V[\phi](\tau, t) := \int_{\mathcal{N}^V(\tau, t)} |\partial_u \phi|^2 + |\nabla \phi|^2$$

verifies,

$$\sup_{\tau \in [0, t]} (1 + \tau)^2 \underline{\mathcal{E}}^V[\phi](\tau, t) \lesssim \mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{3,t}[\square\phi] \quad (\text{A.3.14})$$

3. By relaxing the decay assumptions on $\square\phi$ we have the following slightly weaker decay estimates for the flux.

$$\mathcal{E}[\phi](t) \lesssim (1 + t)^{-2+\epsilon} [\mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi]] \quad (\text{A.3.15})$$

where,

$$\mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi] := \mathcal{I}_2^-[\square\phi](0, t)$$

Proof. The proof of (A.3.14) follows easily from the standard energy identity (applied to the region $\mathcal{D}^V(\tau, t) = \mathcal{D}(\tau, t) \cap \{v \leq V\}$, for any $\tau \in [0, t]$),

$$\underline{\mathcal{E}}^V[\phi](\tau, t) + \mathcal{E}[\phi](t) \leq \mathcal{E}[\phi](\tau) + \int_{\mathcal{D}^V(\tau, t)} (1 + r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|$$

combined with (A.3.13).

It remains to prove (A.3.15). Taking $p = 2 - \epsilon$ in the definition of f_p and applying proposition A.3.9 for the functions $f_{1-\epsilon}, f_{2-\epsilon}$ in the interval $[0, t]$, we derive,

$$\int_{\Sigma_R(t)} r^{1-\epsilon} (\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \leq f_{1-\epsilon}(t) \lesssim (1 + t)^{-1} [f_{2-\epsilon}(0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi]]$$

We also have the estimate (see (A.3.12) with $p = 2 - \epsilon$),

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Sigma_R(t)} r^{2-\epsilon} (\widehat{L}\phi)^2 &\lesssim \int_{\Sigma_R(0)} r^{2-\epsilon} (\widehat{L}\phi)^2 + \mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \int_{\mathcal{D}_R(0, t)} r^{3-\epsilon} |\square\phi|^2 + \int_{\mathcal{D}(0, t)} (1 + r)^{1+\delta} |\square\phi|^2 \\ &\leq \mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi] \end{aligned}$$

Interpolating we derive,

$$\int_{\Sigma_R(t)} r (\widehat{L}\phi)^2 \leq (1 + t)^{-1+\epsilon} [\mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi]]$$

We then proceed as in the proof of proposition A.3.9 to deduce that,

$$\mathcal{E}[\phi](t) \leq f_0(t) \lesssim (1 + t)^{-2+\epsilon} [\mathcal{E}[\phi](0) + \mathcal{I}_{2,t}^-[\square\phi]]$$

as desired. \square

Bibliography

- [Al] S. Alinhac, *Energy multipliers for perturbations of the Schwarzschild metric*, Comm. Math. Phys. **288** (2009), 199–224.
- [An-Luk] X. An and J. Luk, *Trapped surfaces in vacuum arising dynamically from mild incoming radiation*, ArXiv:1409.6270v2.
- [A-B] L. Andersson and P. Blue, *Hidden symmetries and decay for the wave equation on the Kerr spacetime*. Ann. of Math. (2) **182** (2015), 787–853.
- [AWPW] L. Andersson, S. Ma, C. Paganini and B. Whiting, *Mode stability on the real axis*, J. Math. Phys. **58** (2017).
- [ABBMa2019] L. Andersson, T. Bäckdahl, P. Blue and S. Ma, *Stability for linearized gravity on the Kerr spacetime*, arXiv:1903.03859.
- [AArGa] Y. Angelopoulos, S. Aretakis and D. Gajic, *A vector field approach to almost-sharp decay for the wave equation on spherically symmetric, stationary spacetimes*, Ann. PDE **4** (2018), Art. 15, 120 pp.
- [Bi] L. Bieri, *An extension of the stability theorem of the Minkowski space in general relativity*, Thesis, ETH, 2007.
- [BiZi] L. Bieri and N. Zipser, *Extensions of the stability theorem of the Minkowski space in general relativity*. AMS/IP Studies in Advanced Mathematics, 2009. xxiv+491 pp.
- [BFJT] L. Bigorgne, D. Fajman, J. Joudioux, J. Smulevici and M. Thaller, *Asymptotic stability of Minkowski spacetime with non-compactly massless Vlasov matter*, ARMA **242** (2021), 1–147.
- [B-S1] P. Blue and A. Soffer, *Semilinear wave equations on the Schwarzschild manifold. I. Local decay estimates*, Adv. Differential Equations **8** (2003), 595–614.

- [B-S2] P. Blue and A. Soffer, *Errata for “Global existence and scattering for the nonlinear Schrödinger equation on Schwarzschild manifolds”*, “Semilinear wave equations on the Schwarzschild manifold I: Local Decay Estimates”, and “The wave equation on the Schwarzschild metric II: Local Decay for the spin 2 Regge Wheeler equation”, gr-qc/0608073, 6 pages.
- [B-St] P. Blue and J. Sterbenz, *Uniform decay of local energy and the semi-linear wave equation on Schwarzschild space*, Comm. Math. Phys. **268** (2006), 481–504.
- [Carter] B. Carter, *Global structure of the Kerr family of gravitational fields*, Phys. Rev. **174** (1968), 1559–1571.
- [Chand2] S. Chandrasekhar, *On the equations governing the perturbations of the Schwarzschild black hole*, P. Roy. Soc. Lond. A Mat. **343** (1975), 289–298.
- [Chand3] S. Chandrasekhar, *An introduction to the theory of the Kerr metric and its perturbations*, in General Relativity, an Einstein centenary survey, ed. S.W. Hawking and W. Israel, Cambridge University Press (1979).
- [Chand4] S. Chandrasekhar, *Truth and Beauty: Aesthetics and Motivations in Science*, The University of Chicago Press (1987).
- [Chen] P.-N. Chen, M.-T. Wang and S.-T. Yau, *Quasilocal angular momentum and center of mass in general relativity*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **20** (2016), 671–682.
- [Chen2] P.-N. Chen, M.-T. Wang, Y.-K. Wang and S.-T. Yau, *Supertranslation invariance of angular momentum*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **25** (2021), 777–789.
- [Br] Y. Choquet-Bruhat, *Théorème d’existence pour certains systèmes d’équations aux dérivées partielles non-linéaires.*, Acta Math. **88** (1952), 141–225.
- [Chr] D. Christodoulou, *Global solutions of nonlinear hyperbolic equations for small initial data*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **39** (1986), 267–282.
- [Chr-BH] D. Christodoulou, *The formation of Black Holes in General Relativity*, EMS Monographs in Mathematics, 2009.
- [Ck-Kl0] D. Christodoulou and S. Klainerman, *Asymptotic properties of linear field theories in Minkowski space*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **43** (1990), 137–199.
- [Ch-Kl] D. Christodoulou and S. Klainerman, *The global nonlinear stability of the Minkowski space*, Princeton University Press (1993).
- [DaRo1] M. Dafermos and I. Rodnianski, *The red-shift effect and radiation decay on black hole spacetimes*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **62** (2009), 859–919.

- [DaRo2] M. Dafermos and I. Rodnianski, *A proof of the uniform boundedness of solutions to the wave equation on slowly rotating Kerr backgrounds*, Invent. Math. **185** (2011), 467–559.
- [Da-Ro3] M. Dafermos and I. Rodnianski, *A new physical-space approach to decay for the wave equation with applications to black hole spacetimes*, XVIth International Congress on Mathematical Physics, World Sci. Publ., Hackensack, NJ, 2010, 421–432.
- [D-R-SR] M. Dafermos, I. Rodnianski and Y. Shlapentokh-Rothman, *Decay for solutions of the wave equation on Kerr exterior spacetimes iii: The full subextremal case $|a| < m$* , Ann. of Math. **183** (2016), 787–913.
- [DHR] M. Dafermos, G. Holzegel and I. Rodnianski, *Linear stability of the Schwarzschild solution to gravitational perturbations*, Acta Math. **222** (2019), 1–214.
- [DHR-Kerr] M. Dafermos, G. Holzegel and I. Rodnianski, *Boundedness and decay for the Teukolsky equation on Kerr spacetimes I: The case $|a| \ll M$* , Ann. PDE (2019), 118 pp.
- [DHRT] M. Dafermos, G. Holzegel, I. Rodnianski and M. Taylor, *The non-linear stability of the Schwarzschild family of black holes*, arXiv:2104.0822.
- [DKSW] R. Donninger, J. Krieger, J. Szeftel and W. Wong, *Codimension one stability of the catenoid under the vanishing mean curvature flow in Minkowski space*, Duke Math. Journal **165** (2016), 723–791.
- [FJS] D. Fajman, J. Joudioux and J. Smulevici, *The stability of the Minkowski space for the Einstein-Vlasov system*, Anal. PDE **14** (2021), 425–531.
- [Fang1] A. J. Fang, *Nonlinear stability of the slowly-rotating Kerr-de Sitter family* arXiv:2112.07183.
- [Fang2] A. J. Fang, *Linear stability of the slowly-rotating Kerr-de Sitter family* arXiv:2207.07902.
- [Fins1] F. Finsler, N. Kamran, J. Smoller and S.-T. Yau, *Decay of solutions of the wave equation in the Kerr geometry*, Communications in Mathematical Physics **264** (2006), 465–503.
- [Fins2] F. Finsler and J. Smoller, *Linear stability of the non-extreme Kerr black hole*, Adv. Theor. Math. Phys. **21** (2017), 1991–2085.
- [GHP] R. Geroch, A. Held and R. Penrose, *A space-time calculus based on pairs of null directions*, Journal of Mathematical Physics **14** (1973), 874–881.

- [GKS-2020] E. Giorgi, S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *A general formalism for the stability of Kerr*, arXiv:2002.02740.
- [Giorgi] E. Giorgi, *The linear stability of Reissner-Nordström spacetime for small charge*, Ann. PDE **6**, 8 (2020).
- [GKS-2022] E. Giorgi, S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Wave equations estimates and the nonlinear stability of slowly rotating Kerr black holes*, arXiv:2205.14808.
- [Giorgi:KN] Giorgi E., *Electromagnetic-gravitational perturbations of Kerr-Newman spacetime: the Teukolsky and Regge-Wheeler equations*, arXiv:2002.07228, to appear in Journal of Hyperbolic Differential Equations.
- [Graf] O. Graf, *Global nonlinear stability of Minkowski space for spacelike-characteristic initial data*, arXiv:2010.12434.
- [HHV] D. Häfner, P. Hintz and A. Vasy, *Linear stability of slowly rotating Kerr black holes*, Invent. Math., **223** (2021), 1227–1406.
- [H-V1] P. Hintz and A. Vasy, *The global non-linear stability of the Kerr-de Sitter family of black holes*, Acta Math. **220** (2018), 1–206.
- [HV2] P. Hintz and A. Vasy, *Stability of Minkowski space and polyhomogeneity of the metric*, Ann. PDE **6**, 2 (2020).
- [Huneau] C. Huneau, *Stability of Minkowski spacetime with a translation space-like Killing field*, Ann. PDE **4** (2018), Art. 12, 147 pp.
- [HKW] P. K. Hung, J. Keller and M. T. Wang, *Linear stability of Schwarzschild spacetime: decay of metric coefficients*, J. Diff. Geom **116** (2020), 481–541.
- [IK-review] A. Ionescu and S. Klainerman *Rigidity results in General Relativity: A review*, Surveys in Differential Geometry **20**, 123–156, 2015.
- [I-Kl] A. Ionescu and S. Klainerman, *On the global stability of the wave-map equation in Kerr spaces with small angular momentum*, Ann. PDE **1** (2015), Art. 1, 78 pp.
- [IP] A. Ionescu and B. Pausader, *The Einstein-Klein-Gordon coupled system: global stability of the Minkowski solution*, Annals of Math Studies, 213. Princeton University Press, Princeton NJ, 2022, xi+297 pp.
- [Johnson] T. W. Johnson, *The linear stability of the Schwarzschild solution to gravitational perturbations in the generalised wave gauge*, Ann. PDE **5** (2019), no. 2, Art. 13, 92 pp.

- [K-Wald] B. S. Kay and R. M. Wald, *Linear stability of Schwarzschild under perturbations which are non-vanishing on the bifurcation 2-sphere*, Classical Quantum Gravity **4** (1987), 893–898.
- [Kerr] R. P. Kerr, *Gravitational field of a spinning mass as an example of algebraically special metrics*, Physical Review Letters **11** (1963), 237.
- [Kl-vect1] S. Klainerman, *Uniform decay estimates and the Lorentz invariance of the classical wave equations*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **38** (1985), 321–332.
- [Kl:vect2] S. Klainerman, *Remarks on the global Sobolev inequalities*, Communications on Pure and Applied Mathematics, Vol. 40, 111–117 (1987).
- [Kl-ICM] S. Klainerman, *Long time behavior of solutions to nonlinear wave equations*, Proceedings of the International Congress of Mathematicians, Vol. 1, 2 (Warsaw, 1983), 1209–1215, PWN, Warsaw, 1984.
- [Kl-null] S. Klainerman, *The Null Condition and global existence to nonlinear wave equations*, Lect. in Appl. Math. **23** (1986), 293–326.
- [Kl-vect2] S. Klainerman, *Remarks on the global Sobolev inequalities*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **40** (1987), 111–117.
- [Kl-L-R] S. Klainerman, J. Luk and I. Rodnianski *A Fully Anisotropic Mechanism for Formation of Trapped Surfaces in Vacuum*, Inventiones **198** (2014), 1–26.
- [Kl-Ni1] S. Klainerman and F. Nicolo, *The evolution problem in general relativity*. Progress in Mathematical Physics **25**, Birkhauser, Boston, 2003, +385 pp.
- [Kl-Ni2] S. Klainerman and F. Nicolo, *Peeling properties of asymptotic solutions to the Einstein vacuum equations*, Class. Quantum Grav. **20** (2003), 3215–3257.
- [Kl-Rod1] S. Klainerman and I. Rodnianski, *On the break-down criterion in General Relativity*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. **23** (2010), 345–382.
- [Kl-Rod2] S. Klainerman and I. Rodnianski, *On the formation of trapped surfaces*, Acta Mathematica, **208** (2012), 211– 333.
- [K-S:Schw] S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Global Non-Linear Stability of Schwarzschild Spacetime under Polarized Perturbations*, Annals of Math Studies, 210. Princeton University Press, Princeton NJ, 2020, xviii+856 pp.
- [K-S:GCM1] S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Construction of GCM spheres in perturbations of Kerr* arXiv:1911.00697. Ann. PDE, 8, Art. 17, 153 pp., 2022.

- [K-S:GCM2] S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Effective results in uniformization and intrinsic GCM spheres in perturbations of Kerr*, arXiv:1912.12195. Ann. PDE, **8** (2), Art. 18, 89 pp., 2022.
- [K-S:Kerr] S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Kerr stability for small angular momentum*, Pure and Appl. Math. Quaterly (PAMQ), Volume 19(2023), 3, pp. 791-1678,
- [K-S:review] S. Klainerman and J. Szeftel, *Brief introduction to the stability of Kerr*, arXiv:2210.14400, to appear in PAMQ.
- [Ko-Is] H. Kodama and A. Ishibashi, *A master equation for gravitational perturbations of maximally symmetric black holes in higher dimensions*. Progress of Theoretical Physics 110:701–722, 2003.
- [Lf-Ma] LeFloch and Y. Ma, *The global nonlinear stability of Minkowski space for self-gravitating massive fields*, Comm. Math. Phys. **346** (2016), 603–665.
- [Lind] H. Lindblad, *On the asymptotic behavior of solutions to Einsteins vacuum equations in wave coordinates*, Comm. Math. Phys. **353**, (2017), 135–184.
- [Lind-Rodn] H. Lindblad and I. Rodnianski, *Global existence in the Einstein Vacuum equations in wave co-ordinates*. Comm. Math. Phys. **256** (2005), 43–110.
- [Lind-Ta] H. Lindblad and M. Taylor, *Global stability of Minkowski space for the Einstein-Vlasov system in the harmonic gauge*, ARMA **235** (2020), 517–633.
- [Luk] J. Luk, *The null condition and global existence for nonlinear wave equations on slowly rotating Kerr spacetimes*, JEMS **15** (2013), 1629–1700.
- [Ma] S. Ma, *Uniform energy bound and Morawetz estimate for extreme components of spin fields in the exterior of a slowly rotating Kerr black hole II: linearized gravity*, Comm. Math. Phys. **377** (2020), 2489–2551.
- [Ma-Me] Y. Martel and F. Merle, *Asymptotic stability of solitons for subcritical generalized KdV equations*, Arch. Ration. Mech. Anal. **157** (2001), 219–254.
- [Ma-Me-Ta-To] J. Marzuola, J. Metcalfe, D. Tataru and M. Tohaneanu, *Strichartz estimates on Schwarzschild black hole backgrounds*, Comm. Math. Phys. **293** (2010), 37–83.
- [Millet] P. Millet, *Optimal decay for solutions of the Teukolsky equation on the Kerr metric for the full subextremal range $|a| < M$* , arXiv:2302.06946.
- [Me-R] F. Merle and P. Raphaël, *On universality of blow-up profile for L^2 critical nonlinear Schrödinger equation*, Invent. Math. **156** (2004), 565–672.

- [Moncr] V. Moncrief, *Gravitational perturbations of spherically symmetric systems. I. The exterior problem*, Ann. Phys. **88** (1975), 323–342.
- [Mor1] C. Morawetz, *Decay of solutions of the exterior initial boundary value problem for the wave equation*. Comm. Pure and App. Math. **14** (1961), 561–568.
- [Mor2] C. Morawetz, J. V. Ralston and W. A. Strauss, *Decay of solutions of the wave equation outside non-trapping obstacles*, Comm. Pure Appl. Math. **30** (1977), 447–508.
- [NP] E. Newman and R. Penrose, *An approach to gravitational radiation by a method of spin coefficients*, J. Math. Phys. **3** (1962), 566–578.
- [P-T] W. Press and S. A. Teukolsky, *Perturbations of a rotating black hole. II. Dynamical stability of the Kerr metric*, Astrophys. J. **185** (1973), 649–673.
- [Re-W] T. Regge and J. A. Wheeler, *Stability of a Schwarzschild singularity*, Phys. Rev. (2), 108:1063–1069, 1957.
- [Rizzi] A. Rizzi, *Angular Momentum in General Relativity: A new Definition*, Phys. Rev. Letters, vol 81, no6, 1150–1153, 1998.
- [Vo] V. Schlue, *Decay of the Weyl curvature in expanding black hole cosmologies*, Ann. PDE, 8, Art. 9, 125 pp., 2022.
- [Shen] D. Shen, *Construction of GCM hypersurfaces in perturbations of Kerr*, arXiv:2205.12336. Annals of PDE 9, Art. 11, 2023.
- [Shen:Mink-ext] D. Shen, *Stability of Minkowski spacetime in exterior regions*, arXiv:2211.15230.
- [Shen:Kerr-ext] D. Shen, *Kerr stability in external regions*, arXiv:2303.12758.
- [SR] Y. Shlapentokh-Rothman, *Quantitative Mode Stability for the Wave Equation on the Kerr Spacetime*, Ann. Henri Poincaré. **16** (2015), 289–345.
- [SR-Te1] Y. Shlapentokh-Rothman and R. Teixeira da Costa, *Boundedness and decay for the Teukolsky equation on Kerr in the full subextremal range $|a| < M$: frequency space analysis*, arXiv:2007.07211.
- [SR-Te2] Y. Shlapentokh-Rothman and R. Teixeira da Costa, *Boundedness and decay for the Teukolsky equation on Kerr in the full subextremal range $|a| < M$: physical space analysis*, arXiv:2302.08916.
- [St] J. Stogin, *Princeton PHD thesis*, 2017.

- [Sz] L. B. Szabados, *Quasi-Local Energy-Momentum and Angular Momentum in General Relativity*, Living Rev. Relativity, 12, (2009), 4.
- [Ta-To] D. Tataru and M. Tohaneanu, *A Local Energy Estimate on Kerr Black Hole Backgrounds*, Int. Math. Res. Not., 2 (2011), 248–292.
- [Te] R. Teixeira da Costa, *Mode stability for the Teukolsky equation on extremal and subextremal Kerr spacetimes*, Comm. Math. Phys. **378** (2020), 705–781.
- [Teuk] S. A. Teukolsky, *Perturbations of a rotating black hole. I. Fundamental equations for gravitational, electromagnetic, and neutrino-field perturbations*, Astrophys. J. **185** (1973), 635–648.
- [Vishev] C. V. Vishveshwara, *Stability of the Schwarzschild metric*, Phys. Rev. D, 1 (1970), 2870–2879.
- [Wald] R. M. Wald, *Construction of solutions of gravitational, electromagnetic, or other perturbation equations from solutions of decoupled equations*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **41** (1978), 203–206.
- [Wa] Q. Wang, *An intrinsic hyperboloid approach for Einstein Klein-Gordon equations*, J. Diff. Geom. **115** (2020), 27–109.
- [Whit] B. Whiting, *Mode stability of the Kerr black hole*, J. Math. Phys. **30** (1989), 1301–1305.
- [Ze] F. J. Zerilli, *Effective potential for even-parity Regge-Wheeler gravitational perturbation equations*, Phys. Rev. Lett. **24** (1970), 737–738.